The Nintendo Gameboy.

The GameBoy is a toy. Or is it?

I will be clear from day one: the GameBoy **is** a toy. And a pretty good one too. I never played with one until a few weeks ago, when I was at a family gathering. The kids left it for what it was. The moment I picked the damned thing up, I recognized that this machine has a lot more to offer than entertainment for adolescent fingers. So I started to dig something deeper into the world of the GameBoy...

After some websearching it became clear that the GameBoy is a damn fine gameconsole that allowed formidable abuse as a microcontroller. As you can see, the exterior of the GameBoy has:

a. An attractive handheld case
b. A crisp colour LCD of 160 x 144 pixels
c. Full cursor keypad
d. Two big general purpose push buttons for, say, Enter and Escape
e. Two auxilliary (smaller) push buttons
f. An acceptable speaker
g. A headphone jack for stereo sound
h. An expansion port
i. A serial link cable
j. A bidirectional infrared comm port

Now, this is quite good for any kind of controller you want to use. In fact, the Elektor magazine (see www.elektor-electronics.co.uk) made a fully functional digital storage scope (DSO) out of this small computer. In fact, they didn't make it. They bought the idea from a guy from the UK.
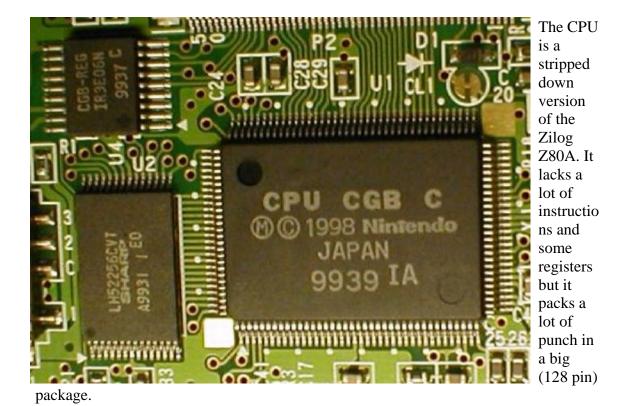
Under the hood.

Time to take a look inside. First you need to remove the screws. This looks a bit hard (three-wing screws) but if you take a small instruments screw driver and apply some force, you can turn the screws out quite easily. There are 6 screws; two are inside the battery compartment.

Now you can lift the back cover off to reveal the inside. Not much to see. Half of the inside is a white PCB plane, followed by the 32 pin ROM/expansion port and then the actual computing area. Which is what you see on the left.

From left to right we see the on/off switch, the 32 KB SRAM, CPU and crystal and then the audio volume control plus the datalink socket. Upper middle is the connector for the LCD and upper right is the IR circuitry. And that's just about it. The CPU is a high integration kind with lots of I/O ports on the die. The 256 byte bootstraploader is on this CPU.

The processor.

The CPU is a stripped down version of the Zilog Z80A. It lacks a lot of instructions and some registers but it packs a lot of punch in a big (128 pin) package.

For microcontroller applications this reduction is no big deal. We don't need 23 registers. The usual 7 will do perfectly well. On the left we see the main trio again. The LH52256 is the 32 KB SRAM that is mapped to part of the upper 32 KB of the address space via bankswitching. Above it is the LCD controller and to the right we see our beloved Z80 clone.

I took the liberty to borrow some figures from related websites:

- o Circuit layout of Gameboy (monochrome)
- o Schematic overview
- o Link-cable and expansion port layout

Game cartridges.

On the left, you see a game cartridge. This one is from 'V-rally', a quite addictive game, if (or perhaps especially) you don't have a driver's license. It shows what's inside a typical Gameboy game cartridge. I'll be concise: not much. A ROM chip containing the actual game, plus an MBC controller.

The MBC is the Memory Bank Controller. Most ROM's are over 128 KB in size so there must be some kind of paging or bankswitching in order to map the big ROM space into the 16 bit memory map of the Z80 processor. That's where the MBC comes in. In a separate topic, I have traced all the signal lines in the cartridge and put them in tables for easier overview.

The parts we see in this picture are:

- The plastic case. It fixes the position of the PCB with respect to the I/O connector. It uses the big round hole in the left and the small plastic pin on the far right (just above pin 17 of the ROM).
- The I/O bus connector fingers bring out the full address and data busses plus some control circuitry. The fingers are gold plated and the Power and Ground planes are well layed out.
- Above the rectangular holes there is room for two axial capacitors for decoupling and one for mounting a solid tantalum electrolytical capacitor. In this case, neither is used.

- The Memory Bank Controller is in the top right section. MBC1 is a 24 pin surface mount circuit. It maps the 128 KB ROM in 16 KB windows into the Z80 memory map.
- The ROM is in the lower right. It's a 32 pin device. It gets the lower 15 address lines from the CPU and the rest comes from the MBC.

Inside a Gameboy cartridge.

The most popular name for a Gameboy game-cartridge is 'cart'. I will use that name throughout this site since it saves on typing.

A cart contains the ROM that is neede to start the game. The ROM in fact IS the game. It is mapped in the lower 32 KB of the memorymap. The bottom 16 KB is fixed, the resst of the ROM is mapped in the second 16 KB of the memory map, using bank switching. For this purpose the Memory Bank Controller (MBC) is present. The cartridges I took apart all have the MBC-1 inside so I will only pay attention to this particular one. Please read the documentation section (see navigator) for all details. If you don't see a navigator, click here.

As I explained before, the most important parts of the game cart are:

- The 32 pin I/O connector
- The MBC chip (top)

- The ROM chip (bottom)

For this particular cart, I removed the ROM and traced all signal lines, which I will tell about in the remainder of this page.

This cart is meant to become a kind of docking station for hardware extensions. I'm not sure how I will do it. There are roughly two methods right now:

a. Connect a flatcable between the ROM connections to a ZIF socket for an external ROM and run all the I/O signals to a 34 pin header for external circuitry
b. Only lead the I/O connector pins out

The first option is best since I will be able to use the original MBC for bankswitching. On the other hand, a home made application that is not a game will rarely need more than 16 KB of object code, so the necessity of bankswitching will be very low. Time will tell what is the best method.

Signal pins of the I/O connector

I/O pin	Signal name	ROM	MBC
1	+5 Volts	32	24
2	CLK / 4		
3	/WR		22
4	/RD	24	11
5	/CS		23
6	A0	12	
7	A1	11	
8	A2	10	
9	A3	9	
10	A4	8	
11	A5	7	
12	A6	6	
13	A7	5	
14	A8	27	

15	A9	26	
16	A10	23	
17	A11	25	
18	A12	4	
19	A13	20	19
20	A14		20
21	A15	22	21
22	D0	13	1
23	D1	14	2
24	D2	15	3
25	D3	17	4
26	D4	18	5
27	D5	19	
28	D6	20	
29	D7	21	
30	/RESET		10
31	Audio in		
32	Ground	16	12

The bankswitcher.

Below, I show how the ROM and the MBC are interconnected. Of course this is just one example and a simple one too, but it shows how the hardware of the bankswitching took place.
Bankswitching was done by writing to some specific pages in the ROM area. Since the ROM doesn't react on Write pulses, the MBC can be programmed without any side effects. If someone is to install an EEPROM here, care must be taken however.

```
        ROM pinout & connections                      MBC pinout &
connections

        +----- v -----+                               +----- v --
---+
    GND   1 -| NC     Vcc |- 32   +5V            D0    1 -|
|- 24   +5V
```

```
    MBC16    2 -| A16      A18 |- 31   MBC14            D1    2 -|
|o 23  CS
    MBC17    3 -| A15      A17 |- 30   MBC15            D2    3 -|
|o 22  WR
     A12     4 -| A12      A14 |- 29   MBC6             D3    4 -|
|- 21  A15
      A7     5 -| A7       A13 |- 28   A13              D4    5 -|      M
|- 20  A14
      A6     6 -| A6        A8 |- 26   A8              A14'   6 -|      B
|- 19  A13
      A5     7 -| A5    R   A9 |- 25   A9               GND   7 -|      C
|- 18  ??
      A4     8 -| A4    O  A11 |- 24   A11             +5V    8 -|
|- 17  A15'
      A3     9 -| A3    M   RD |o 24   /RD              GND   9 -|      1
|- 16  A16'
      A2    10 -| A2       A10 |- 23   A10            RESET  10 o|
|- 15  A17'
      A1    11 -| A1        CS |o 22   A15               RD  11 o|
|- 14  A18'
      A0    12 -| A0        D7 |- 21   D7               GND  12 -|
|- 13  GND
      D0    13 -| D0        D6 |- 20   D6                         +----------
---+
      D1    14 -| D1        D5 |- 19   D5
      D2    15 -| D2        D4 |- 18   D4
     GND    16 -| GND       D3 |- 17   D3
                  +-------------+
          |    |        |       |   |
          |    |   |    |    |   |
          |    |   +--------o--- | -- | ------ Internal function
          |    |                |   |
          |    +------------------o -- | ------ Pin number
          |    |                      |
          +---------------------------o------- Connection with Gameboy
 I/O connector
```

I'm not sure what pin 18 of the MBC is connected to. It is not connected on my cart, so I can only guess what it's for. The most probable guess is that it is A19', i.e. the bankswitchable A19. If you know what it's for, let me know. The E-mail address is in the topright section of the navigator frame.

According to Dr Pan's text, the MBC-1 should be able to address 2 megabyte ROM's so it needs 21 address line for this. A0 - A13 come from the CPU. So the MBC-1 will need to generate A14 upto and including A20. So most probaly the pins now assignd to GND (except pin 12) can be the extra address lines.

Pan Docs

Overview
About the Pan Docs
Game Boy Technical Data

About the Pan Docs

```
==================================================================
      Everything You Always Wanted To Know About GAMEBOY *
==================================================================


                    * but were afraid to ask


      Pan of -ATX- Document Updated by contributions from:
   Marat Fayzullin, Pascal Felber, Paul Robson, Martin Korth
         CPU, SGB, CGB, AUX specs by Martin Korth


              Last updated 10/2001 by nocash
            Previously updated 4-Mar-98 by kOOPa
```

Forward
The following was typed up for informational purposes regarding the inner workings on

the hand-held game machine known as GameBoy, manufactured and designed by Nintendo Co., LTD. This info is presented to inform a user on how their Game Boy works and what makes it "tick". GameBoy is copyrighted by Nintendo Co., LTD. Any reference to copyrighted material is not presented for monetary gain, but for educational purposes and higher learning.

Available Document Formats
The present version of this document is available in Text and Html format:
```
http://www.work.de/nocash/pandocs.txt
http://www.work.de/nocash/pandocs.htm
```
Also, a copy of this document is included in the manual of newer versions of the no$gmb debugger, because of recent piracy attacks (many thanks and best wishes go to hell) I have currently no intention to publish any such or further no$gmb updates though.

Game Boy Technical Data

```
CPU          - 8-bit (Similar to the Z80 processor)
Clock Speed  - 4.194304MHz (4.295454MHz for SGB, max. 8.4MHz for CGB)
Work RAM     - 8K Byte (32K Byte for CGB)
Video RAM    - 8K Byte (16K Byte for CGB)
Screen Size  - 2.6"
Resolution   - 160x144 (20x18 tiles)
Max sprites  - Max 40 per screen, 10 per line
Sprite sizes - 8x8 or 8x16
Palettes     - 1x4 BG, 2x3 OBJ (for CGB: 8x4 BG, 8x3 OBJ)
Colors       - 4 grayshades (32768 colors for CGB)
Horiz Sync   - 9198 KHz (9420 KHz for SGB)
Vert Sync    - 59.73 Hz (61.17 Hz for SGB)
Sound        - 4 channels with stereo sound
Power        - DC6V 0.7W (DC3V 0.7W for GB Pocket, DC3V 0.6W for CGB)
```

Memory Map

The gameboy is having a 16bit address bus, that is used to address ROM, RAM, and I/O registers.

General Memory Map
```
  0000-3FFF   16KB ROM Bank 00     (in cartridge, fixed at bank 00)
  4000-7FFF   16KB ROM Bank 01..NN (in cartridge, switchable bank
number)
  8000-9FFF   8KB Video RAM (VRAM) (switchable bank 0-1 in CGB Mode)
  A000-BFFF   8KB External RAM     (in cartridge, switchable bank, if
any)
  C000-CFFF   4KB Work RAM Bank 0 (WRAM)
  D000-DFFF   4KB Work RAM Bank 1 (WRAM)  (switchable bank 1-7 in CGB
Mode)
  E000-FDFF   Same as C000-DDFF (ECHO)    (typically not used)
```

```
FE00-FE9F   Sprite Attribute Table (OAM)
FEA0-FEFF   Not Usable
FF00-FF7F   I/O Ports
FF80-FFFE   High RAM (HRAM)
FFFF        Interrupt Enable Register
```

Jump Vectors in First ROM Bank
The following addresses are supposed to be used as jump vectors:
```
0000,0008,0010,0018,0020,0028,0030,0038   for RST commands
0040,0048,0050,0058,0060                  for Interrupts
```
However, the memory may be used for any other purpose in case that your program doesn't use any (or only some) RST commands or Interrupts. RST commands are 1-byte opcodes that work similiar to CALL opcodes, except that the destination address is fixed.

Cartridge Header in First ROM Bank
The memory at 0100-014F contains the cartridge header. This area contains information about the program, its entry point, checksums, information about the used MBC chip, the ROM and RAM sizes, etc. Most of the bytes in this area are required to be specified correctly. For more information read the chapter about The Cartridge Header.

External Memory and Hardware
The areas from 0000-7FFF and A000-BFFF may be used to connect external hardware. The first area is typically used to address ROM (read only, of course), cartridges with Memory Bank Controllers (MBCs) are additionally using this area to output data (write only) to the MBC chip. The second area is often used to address external RAM, or to address other external hardware (Real Time Clock, etc). External memory is often battery buffered, and may hold saved game positions and high scrore tables (etc.) even when the gameboy is turned of, or when the cartridge is removed. For specific information read the chapter about Memory Bank Controllers.

Video Display

Video I/O Registers
LCD Control Register
LCD Status Register
LCD Interrupts
LCD Position and Scrolling
LCD Monochrome Palettes
LCD Color Palettes (CGB only)
LCD VRAM Bank (CGB only)
LCD OAM DMA Transfers
LCD VRAM DMA Transfers (CGB only)

Video Memory
VRAM Tile Data

LCD Control Register

FF40 - LCDC - LCD Control (R/W)

```
Bit 7 - LCD Display Enable             (0=Off, 1=On)
Bit 6 - Window Tile Map Display Select (0=9800-9BFF, 1=9C00-9FFF)
Bit 5 - Window Display Enable          (0=Off, 1=On)
Bit 4 - BG & Window Tile Data Select   (0=8800-97FF, 1=8000-8FFF)
Bit 3 - BG Tile Map Display Select     (0=9800-9BFF, 1=9C00-9FFF)
Bit 2 - OBJ (Sprite) Size              (0=8x8, 1=8x16)
Bit 1 - OBJ (Sprite) Display Enable    (0=Off, 1=On)
Bit 0 - BG Display (for CGB see below) (0=Off, 1=On)
```

LCDC.7 - LCD Display Enable
CAUTION: Stopping LCD operation (Bit 7 from 1 to 0) may be performed during V-Blank ONLY, disabeling the display outside of the V-Blank period may damage the hardware. This appears to be a serious issue, Nintendo is reported to reject any games that do not follow this rule.
V-blank can be confirmed when the value of LY is greater than or equal to 144. When the display is disabled the screen is blank (white), and VRAM and OAM can be accessed freely.

--- LCDC.0 has different Meanings depending on Gameboy Type ---

LCDC.0 - 1) Monochrome Gameboy and SGB: BG Display
When Bit 0 is cleared, the background becomes blank (white). Window and Sprites may still be displayed (if enabled in Bit 1 and/or Bit 5).

LCDC.0 - 2) CGB in CGB Mode: BG and Window Master Priority
When Bit 0 is cleared, the background and window lose their priority - the sprites will be always displayed on top of background and window, independently of the priority flags in OAM and BG Map attributes.

LCDC.0 - 3) CGB in Non CGB Mode: BG and Window Display
When Bit 0 is cleared, both background and window become blank (white), ie. the Window Display Bit (Bit 5) is ignored in that case. Only Sprites may still be displayed (if enabled in Bit 1).
This is a possible compatibility problem - any monochrome games (if any) that disable the background, but still want to display the window wouldn't work properly on CGBs.

LCD Status Register

FF41 - STAT - LCDC Status (R/W)

```
Bit 6 - LYC=LY Coincidence Interrupt (1=Enable) (Read/Write)
Bit 5 - Mode 2 OAM Interrupt         (1=Enable) (Read/Write)
Bit 4 - Mode 1 V-Blank Interrupt     (1=Enable) (Read/Write)
Bit 3 - Mode 0 H-Blank Interrupt     (1=Enable) (Read/Write)
Bit 2 - Coincidence Flag  (0:LYC<>LY, 1:LYC=LY) (Read Only)
Bit 1-0 - Mode Flag       (Mode 0-3, see below) (Read Only)
          0: During H-Blank
          1: During V-Blank
          2: During Searching OAM-RAM
          3: During Transfering Data to LCD Driver
```

The two lower STAT bits show the current status of the LCD controller.

```
Mode 0: The LCD controller is in the H-Blank period and
        the CPU can access both the display RAM (8000h-9FFFh)
        and OAM (FE00h-FE9Fh)


Mode 1: The LCD contoller is in the V-Blank period (or the
        display is disabled) and the CPU can access both the
        display RAM (8000h-9FFFh) and OAM (FE00h-FE9Fh)


Mode 2: The LCD controller is reading from OAM memory.
        The CPU <cannot> access OAM memory (FE00h-FE9Fh)
        during this period.


Mode 3: The LCD controller is reading from both OAM and VRAM,
        The CPU <cannot> access OAM and VRAM during this period.
        CGB Mode: Cannot access Palette Data (FF69,FF6B) either.
```

The following are typical when the display is enabled:

```
Mode 2  2_____2_____2_____2_____2_____2_____2_____
Mode 3  _33_____33_____33_____33_____33_____33_____3____
Mode 0  ___000___000___000___000___000___000_____000
Mode 1  _____11111111111111_____
```

The Mode Flag goes through the values 0, 2, and 3 at a cycle of about 109uS. 0 is present about 48.6uS, 2 about 19uS, and 3 about 41uS. This is interrupted every 16.6ms by the VBlank (1). The mode flag stays set at 1 for about 1.08 ms.

Mode 0 is present between 201-207 clks, 2 about 77-83 clks, and 3 about 169-175 clks. A complete cycle through these states takes 456 clks. VBlank lasts 4560 clks. A complete screen refresh occurs every 70224 clks.)

LCD Interrupts

INT 40 - V-Blank Interrupt

The V-Blank interrupt occurs ca. 59.7 times a second on a regular GB and ca. 61.1 times a second on a Super GB (SGB). This interrupt occurs at the beginning of the V-Blank period (LY=144).
During this period video hardware is not using video ram so it may be freely accessed. This period lasts approximately 1.1 milliseconds.

INT 48 - LCDC Status Interrupt
There are various reasons for this interrupt to occur as described by the STAT register ($FF40). One very popular reason is to indicate to the user when the video hardware is about to redraw a given LCD line. This can be useful for dynamically controlling the SCX/SCY registers ($FF43/$FF42) to perform special video effects.

LCD Position and Scrolling

FF42 - SCY - Scroll Y (R/W)
FF43 - SCX - Scroll X (R/W)
Specifies the position in the 256x256 pixels BG map (32x32 tiles) which is to be displayed at the upper/left LCD display position.
Values in range from 0-255 may be used for X/Y each, the video controller automatically wraps back to the upper (left) position in BG map when drawing exceeds the lower (right) border of the BG map area.

FF44 - LY - LCDC Y-Coordinate (R)
The LY indicates the vertical line to which the present data is transferred to the LCD Driver. The LY can take on any value between 0 through 153. The values between 144 and 153 indicate the V-Blank period. Writing will reset the counter.

FF45 - LYC - LY Compare (R/W)
The gameboy permanently compares the value of the LYC and LY registers. When both values are identical, the coincident bit in the STAT register becomes set, and (if enabled) a STAT interrupt is requested.

FF4A - WY - Window Y Position (R/W)
FF4B - WX - Window X Position minus 7 (R/W)
Specifies the upper/left positions of the Window area. (The window is an alternate background area which can be displayed above of the normal background. OBJs (sprites) may be still displayed above or behinf the window, just as for normal BG.)
The window becomes visible (if enabled) when positions are set in range WX=0..166, WY=0..143. A postion of WX=7, WY=0 locates the window at upper left, it is then completly covering normal background.

LCD Monochrome Palettes

FF47 - BGP - BG Palette Data (R/W) - Non CGB Mode Only
This register assigns gray shades to the color numbers of the BG and Window tiles.
```
Bit 7-6 - Shade for Color Number 3
Bit 5-4 - Shade for Color Number 2
Bit 3-2 - Shade for Color Number 1
Bit 1-0 - Shade for Color Number 0
```
The four possible gray shades are:
```
0  White
1  Light gray
2  Dark gray
3  Black
```
In CGB Mode the Color Palettes are taken from CGB Palette Memory instead.

FF48 - OBP0 - Object Palette 0 Data (R/W) - Non CGB Mode Only
This register assigns gray shades for sprite palette 0. It works exactly as BGP (FF47), except that the lower two bits aren't used because sprite data 00 is transparent.

FF49 - OBP1 - Object Palette 1 Data (R/W) - Non CGB Mode Only
This register assigns gray shades for sprite palette 1. It works exactly as BGP (FF47), except that the lower two bits aren't used because sprite data 00 is transparent.

LCD Color Palettes (CGB only)

FF68 - BCPS/BGPI - CGB Mode Only - Background Palette Index
This register is used to address a byte in the CGBs Background Palette Memory. Each two byte in that memory define a color value. The first 8 bytes define Color 0-3 of Palette 0 (BGP0), and so on for BGP1-7.
```
Bit 0-5   Index (00-3F)
Bit 7     Auto Increment  (0=Disabled, 1=Increment after Writing)
```
Data can be read/written to/from the specified index address through Register FF69. When the Auto Increment Bit is set then the index is automatically incremented after each <write> to FF69. Auto Increment has no effect when <reading> from FF69, so the index must be manually incremented in that case.

FF69 - BCPD/BGPD - CGB Mode Only - Background Palette Data
This register allows to read/write data to the CGBs Background Palette Memory, addressed through Register FF68.
Each color is defined by two bytes (Bit 0-7 in first byte).
```
Bit 0-4   Red Intensity   (00-1F)
Bit 5-9   Green Intensity (00-1F)
Bit 10-14 Blue Intensity  (00-1F)
```
Much like VRAM, Data in Palette Memory cannot be read/written during the time when the LCD Controller is reading from it. (That is when the STAT register indicates Mode 3).
Note: Initially all background colors are initialized as white.

FF6A - OCPS/OBPI - CGB Mode Only - Sprite Palette Index
FF6B - OCPD/OBPD - CGB Mode Only - Sprite Palette Data
These registers are used to initialize the Sprite Palettes OBP0-7, identically as described above for Background Palettes. Note that four colors may be defined for each OBP Palettes - but only Color 1-3 of each Sprite Palette can be displayed, Color 0 is always transparent, and can be initialized to a don't care value.
Note: Initially all sprite colors are uninitialized.

RGB Translation by CGBs
When developing graphics on PCs, note that the RGB values will have different appearance on CGB displays as on VGA monitors:
The highest intensity will produce Light Gray color rather than White. The intensities are not linear; the values 10h-1Fh will all appear very bright, while medium and darker colors are ranged at 00h-0Fh.
The CGB display will mix colors quite oddly, increasing intensity of only one R,G,B color will also influence the other two R,G,B colors.
For example, a color setting of 03EFh (Blue=0, Green=1Fh, Red=0Fh) will appear as Neon Green on VGA displays, but on the CGB it'll produce a decently washed out Yellow.

RGB Translation by GBAs
Even though GBA is described to be compatible to CGB games, most CGB games are completely unplayable on GBAs because most colors are invisible (black). Of course, colors such like Black and White will appear the same on both CGB and GBA, but medium intensities are arranged completely different.
Intensities in range 00h..0Fh are invisible/black (unless eventually under best sunlight circumstances, and when gazing at the screen under obscure viewing angles), unfortunately, these intensities are regulary used by most existing CGB games for medium and darker colors.
Newer CGB games may avoid this effect by changing palette data when detecting GBA hardware. A relative simple method would be using the formula GBA=CGB/2+10h for each R,G,B intensity, probably the result won't be perfect, and (once colors became visible) it may turn out that the color mixing is different also, anyways, it'd be still ways better than no conversion.
Asides, this translation method should have been VERY easy to implement in GBA hardware directly, even though Nintendo obviously failed to do so. How did they say, This seal is your assurance for excellence in workmanship and so on?

LCD VRAM Bank (CGB only)

FF4F - VBK - CGB Mode Only - VRAM Bank
This 1bit register selects the current Video Memory (VRAM) Bank.
```
  Bit 0 - VRAM Bank (0-1)
```

Bank 0 contains 192 Tiles, and two background maps, just as for monochrome games. Bank 1 contains another 192 Tiles, and color attribute maps for the background maps in bank 0.

LCD OAM DMA Transfers

FF46 - DMA - DMA Transfer and Start Address (W)
Writing to this register launches a DMA transfer from ROM or RAM to OAM memory (sprite attribute table). The written value specifies the transfer source address divided by 100h, ie. source & destination are:

```
  Source:      XX00-XX9F   ;XX in range from 00-F1h
  Destination: FE00-FE9F
```

It takes 160 microseconds until the transfer has completed (80 microseconds in CGB Double Speed Mode), during this time the CPU can access only HRAM (memory at FF80-FFFE). For this reason, the programmer must copy a short procedure into HRAM, and use this procedure to start the transfer from inside HRAM, and wait until the transfer has finished:

```
  ld  (0FF46h),a ;start DMA transfer, a=start address/100h
  ld  a,28h      ;delay...
 wait:           ;total 5x40 cycles, approx 200ms
  dec a          ;1 cycle
  jr  nz,wait    ;4 cycles
```

Most programs are executing this procedure from inside of their VBlank procedure, but it is possible to execute it during display redraw also, allowing to display more than 40 sprites on the screen (ie. for example 40 sprites in upper half, and other 40 sprites in lower half of the screen).

LCD VRAM DMA Transfers (CGB only)

FF51 - HDMA1 - CGB Mode Only - New DMA Source, High
FF52 - HDMA2 - CGB Mode Only - New DMA Source, Low
FF53 - HDMA3 - CGB Mode Only - New DMA Destination, High
FF54 - HDMA4 - CGB Mode Only - New DMA Destination, Low
FF55 - HDMA5 - CGB Mode Only - New DMA Length/Mode/Start
These registers are used to initiate a DMA transfer from ROM or RAM to VRAM. The Source Start Address may be located at 0000-7FF0 or A000-DFF0, the lower four bits of the address are ignored (treated as zero). The Destination Start Address may be located at 8000-9FF0, the lower four bits of the address are ignored (treated as zero), the upper 3 bits are ignored either (destination is always in VRAM).

Writing to FF55 starts the transfer, the lower 7 bits of FF55 specify the Transfer Length (divided by 10h, minus 1). Ie. lengths of 10h-800h bytes can be defined by the values 00h-7Fh. And the upper bit of FF55 indicates the Transfer Mode:

Bit7=0 - General Purpose DMA
When using this transfer method, all data is transferred at once. The execution of the program is halted until the transfer has completed. Note that the General Purpose DMA blindly attempts to copy the data, even if the LCD controller is currently accessing VRAM. So General Purpose DMA should be used only if the Display is disabled, or during V-Blank, or (for rather short blocks) during H-Blank.
The execution of the program continues when the transfer has been completed, and FF55 then contains a value if FFh.

Bit7=1 - H-Blank DMA
The H-Blank DMA transfers 10h bytes of data during each H-Blank, ie. at LY=0-143, no data is transferred during V-Blank (LY=144-153), but the transfer will then continue at LY=00. The execution of the program is halted during the separate transfers, but the program execution continues during the 'spaces' between each data block.
Note that the program may not change the Destination VRAM bank (FF4F), or the Source ROM/RAM bank (in case data is transferred from bankable memory) until the transfer has completed!
Reading from Register FF55 returns the remaining length (divided by 10h, minus 1), a value of 0FFh indicates that the transfer has completed. It is also possible to terminate an active H-Blank transfer by writing zero to Bit 7 of FF55. In that case reading from FF55 may return any value for the lower 7 bits, but Bit 7 will be read as "1".

Confirming if the DMA Transfer is Active
Reading Bit 7 of FF55 can be used to confirm if the DMA transfer is active (1=Not Active, 0=Active). This works under any circumstances - after completion of General Purpose, or H-Blank Transfer, and after manually terminating a H-Blank Transfer.

Transfer Timings
In both Normal Speed and Double Speed Mode it takes about 8us to transfer a block of 10h bytes. That are 8 cycles in Normal Speed Mode, and 16 'fast' cycles in Double Speed Mode.
Older MBC controllers (like MBC1-4) and slower ROMs are not guaranteed to support General Purpose or H-Blank DMA, that's because there are always 2 bytes transferred per microsecond (even if the itself program runs it Normal Speed Mode).

VRAM Tile Data

Tile Data is stored in VRAM at addresses 8000h-97FFh, this area defines the Bitmaps for 192 Tiles. In CGB Mode 384 Tiles can be defined, because memory at 0:8000h-97FFh and at 1:8000h-97FFh is used.

Each tile is sized 8x8 pixels and has a color depth of 4 colors/gray shades. Tiles can be displayed as part of the Background/Window map, and/or as OAM tiles (foreground sprites). Note that foreground sprites may have only 3 colors, because color 0 is transparent.

As it was said before, there are two Tile Pattern Tables at $8000-8FFF and at $8800-97FF. The first one can be used for sprites and the background. Its tiles are numbered from 0 to 255. The second table can be used for the background and the window display and its tiles are numbered from -128 to 127.

Each Tile occupies 16 bytes, where each 2 bytes represent a line:

```
Byte 0-1  First Line (Upper 8 pixels)
Byte 2-3  Next Line
etc.
```

For each line, the first byte defines the least significant bits of the color numbers for each pixel, and the second byte defines the upper bits of the color numbers. In either case, Bit 7 is the leftmost pixel, and Bit 0 the rightmost.

So, each pixel is having a color number in range from 0-3. The color numbers are translated into real colors (or gray shades) depending on the current palettes. The palettes are defined through registers FF47-FF49 (Non CGB Mode), and FF68-FF6B (CGB Mode).

VRAM Background Maps

The gameboy contains two 32x32 tile background maps in VRAM at addresses 9800h-9BFFh and 9C00h-9FFFh. Each can be used either to display "normal" background, or "window" background.

BG Map Tile Numbers
An area of VRAM known as Background Tile Map contains the numbers of tiles to be displayed. It is organized as 32 rows of 32 bytes each. Each byte contains a number of a tile to be displayed. Tile patterns are taken from the Tile Data Table located either at $8000-8FFF or $8800-97FF. In the first case, patterns are numbered with unsigned numbers from 0 to 255 (i.e. pattern #0 lies at address $8000). In the second case, patterns have signed numbers from -128 to 127 (i.e. pattern #0 lies at address $9000). The Tile Data Table address for the background can be selected via LCDC register.

BG Map Attributes (CGB Mode only)
In CGB Mode, an additional map of 32x32 bytes is stored in VRAM Bank 1 (each byte defines attributes for the corresponding tile-number map entry in VRAM Bank 0):

```
Bit 0-2  Background Palette number  (BGP0-7)
Bit 3    Tile VRAM Bank number      (0=Bank 0, 1=Bank 1)
Bit 4    Not used
Bit 5    Horizontal Flip            (0=Normal, 1=Mirror horizontally)
Bit 6    Vertical Flip              (0=Normal, 1=Mirror vertically)
Bit 7    BG-to-OAM Priority         (0=Use OAM priority bit, 1=BG
Priority)
```

When Bit 7 is set, the corresponding BG tile will have priority above all OBJs (regardless of the priority bits in OAM memory). There's also an Master Priority flag in LCDC

register Bit 0 which overrides all other priority bits when cleared.

As one background tile has a size of 8x8 pixels, the BG maps may hold a picture of 256x256 pixels, an area of 160x144 pixels of this picture can be displayed on the LCD screen.

Normal Background (BG)
The SCY and SCX registers can be used to scroll the background, allowing to select the origin of the visible 160x144 pixel area within the total 256x256 pixel background map. Background wraps around the screen (i.e. when part of it goes off the screen, it appears on the opposite side.)

The Window
Besides background, there is also a "window" overlaying the background. The window is not scrollable i.e. it is always displayed starting from its left upper corner. The location of a window on the screen can be adjusted via WX and WY registers. Screen coordinates of the top left corner of a window are WX-7,WY. The tiles for the window are stored in the Tile Data Table. Both the Background and the window share the same Tile Data Table.

Both background and window can be disabled or enabled separately via bits in the LCDC register.

VRAM Sprite Attribute Table (OAM)

GameBoy video controller can display up to 40 sprites either in 8x8 or in 8x16 pixels. Because of a limitation of hardware, only ten sprites can be displayed per scan line. Sprite patterns have the same format as BG tiles, but they are taken from the Sprite Pattern Table located at $8000-8FFF and have unsigned numbering.

Sprite attributes reside in the Sprite Attribute Table (OAM - Object Attribute Memory) at $FE00-FE9F. Each of the 40 entries consists of four bytes with the following meanings:

Byte0 - Y Position
Specifies the sprites vertical position on the screen (minus 16).
An offscreen value (for example, Y=0 or Y>=160) hides the sprite.

Byte1 - X Position
Specifies the sprites horizontal position on the screen (minus 8).
An offscreen value (X=0 or X>=168) hides the sprite, but the sprite
still affects the priority ordering - a better way to hide a sprite is to set its Y-coordinate offscreen.

Byte2 - Tile/Pattern Number
Specifies the sprites Tile Number (00-FF). This (unsigned) value selects a tile from memory at 8000h-8FFFh. In CGB Mode this could be either in VRAM Bank 0 or 1,

depending on Bit 3 of the following byte.
In 8x16 mode, the lower bit of the tile number is ignored. Ie. the upper 8x8 tile is "NN AND FEh", and the lower 8x8 tile is "NN OR 01h".

Byte3 - Attributes/Flags:
```
  Bit7   OBJ-to-BG Priority (0=OBJ Above BG, 1=OBJ Behind BG color 1-3)
         (Used for both BG and Window. BG color 0 is always behind OBJ)
  Bit6   Y flip          (0=Normal, 1=Vertically mirrored)
  Bit5   X flip          (0=Normal, 1=Horizontally mirrored)
  Bit4   Palette number  **Non CGB Mode Only** (0=OBP0, 1=OBP1)
  Bit3   Tile VRAM-Bank  **CGB Mode Only**     (0=Bank 0, 1=Bank 1)
  Bit2-0 Palette number  **CGB Mode Only**     (OBP0-7)
```

Sprite Priorities and Conflicts
When sprites with different x coordinate values overlap, the one with the smaller x coordinate (closer to the left) will have priority and appear above any others. This applies in Non CGB Mode only.
When sprites with the same x coordinate values overlap, they have priority according to table ordering. (i.e. $FE00 - highest, $FE04 - next highest, etc.) In CGB Mode priorities are always assigned like this.

Only 10 sprites can be displayed on any one line. When this limit is exceeded, the lower priority sprites (priorities listed above) won't be displayed. To keep unused sprites from affecting onscreen sprites set their Y coordinate to Y=0 or Y=>144+16. Just setting the X coordinate to X=0 or X=>160+8 on a sprite will hide it but it will still affect other sprites sharing the same lines.

Writing Data to OAM Memory
The recommened method is to write the data to normal RAM first, and to copy that RAM to OAM by using the DMA transfer function, initiated through DMA register (FF46). Beside for that, it is also possible to write data directly to the OAM area by using normal LD commands, this works only during the H-Blank and V-Blank periods. The current state of the LCD controller can be read out from the STAT register (FF41).

Accessing VRAM and OAM

CAUTION
When the LCD Controller is drawing the screen it is directly reading from Video Memory (VRAM) and from the Sprite Attribute Table (OAM). During these periods the Gameboy CPU may not access the VRAM and OAM. That means, any attempts to write to VRAM/OAM are ignored (the data remains unchanged). And any attempts to read from VRAM/OAM will return undefined data (typically a value of FFh).

For this reason the program should verify if VRAM/OAM is accessable before actually reading or writing to it. This is usually done by reading the Mode Bits from the STAT Register (FF41). When doing this (as described in the examples below) you should take

care that no interrupts occur between the wait loops and the following memory access - the memory is guaranted to be accessable only for a few cycles directly after the wait loops have completed.

VRAM (memory at 8000h-9FFFh) is accessable during Mode 0-2

```
  Mode 0 - H-Blank Period,
  Mode 1 - V-Blank Period, and
  Mode 2 - Searching OAM Period
```

A typical procedure that waits for accessibility of VRAM would be:

```
  ld   hl,0FF41h    ;-STAT Register
@@wait:             ;\
  bit  1,(hl)       ; Wait until Mode is 0 or 1
  jr   nz,@@wait    ;/
```

Even if the procedure gets executed at the <end> of Mode 0 or 1, it is still proof to assume that VRAM can be accessed for a few more cycles because in either case the following period is Mode 2 which allows access to VRAM either.
In CGB Mode an alternate method to write data to VRAM is to use the HDMA Function (FF51-FF55).

OAM (memory at FE00h-FE9Fh) is accessable during Mode 0-1

```
  Mode 0 - H-Blank Period, and
  Mode 1 - V-Blank Period
```

Beside for that, OAM can be accessed at any time by using the DMA Function (FF46). When directly reading or writing to OAM, a typical procedure that waits for accessibilty or OAM Memory would be:

```
  ld   hl,0FF41h    ;-STAT Register
@@wait1:            ;\
  bit  1,(hl)       ; Wait until Mode is -NOT- 0 or 1
  jr   z,@@wait1    ;/
@@wait2:            ;\
  bit  1,(hl)       ; Wait until Mode 0 or 1 -BEGINS-
  jr   nz,@@wait2   ;/
```

The two wait loops ensure that Mode 0 or 1 will last for a few clock cycles after completion of the procedure. In V-Blank period it might be recommended to skip the whole procedure - and in most cases using the above mentioned DMA function would be more recommended anyways.

Note
When the display is disabled, both VRAM and OAM are accessable at any time. The downside is that the screen is blank (white) during this period, so that disabling the display would be recommended only during initialization.

Sound Controller

Sound Overview
Sound Channel 1 - Tone & Sweep

Sound Overview

There are two sound channels connected to the output terminals SO1 and SO2. There is also a input terminal Vin connected to the cartridge. It can be routed to either of both output terminals. GameBoy circuitry allows producing sound in four different ways:

```
Quadrangular wave patterns with sweep and envelope functions.
Quadrangular wave patterns with envelope functions.
Voluntary wave patterns from wave RAM.
White noise with an envelope function.
```

These four sounds can be controlled independantly and then mixed separately for each of the output terminals.

Sound registers may be set at all times while producing sound.

(Sounds will have a 2.4% higher frequency on Super GB.)

Sound Channel 1 - Tone & Sweep

FF10 - NR10 - Channel 1 Sweep register (R/W)
```
Bit 6-4 - Sweep Time
Bit 3   - Sweep Increase/Decrease
            0: Addition    (frequency increases)
            1: Subtraction (frequency decreases)
Bit 2-0 - Number of sweep shift (n: 0-7)
```
Sweep Time:
```
000: sweep off - no freq change
001: 7.8 ms  (1/128Hz)
010: 15.6 ms (2/128Hz)
011: 23.4 ms (3/128Hz)
100: 31.3 ms (4/128Hz)
101: 39.1 ms (5/128Hz)
110: 46.9 ms (6/128Hz)
111: 54.7 ms (7/128Hz)
```

The change of frequency (NR13,NR14) at each shift is calculated by the following formula where X(0) is initial freq & X(t-1) is last freq:
```
X(t) = X(t-1) +/- X(t-1)/2^n
```

FF11 - NR11 - Channel 1 Sound length/Wave pattern duty (R/W)

```
Bit 7-6 - Wave Pattern Duty (Read/Write)
Bit 5-0 - Sound length data (Write Only) (t1: 0-63)
```

Wave Duty:

```
00: 12.5% ( _-------_-------_------- )
01: 25%   ( __------__------__------ )
10: 50%   ( ____----____----____---- ) (normal)
11: 75%   ( _____--_____--_____-- )
```

Sound Length = (64-t1)*(1/256) seconds
The Length value is used only if Bit 6 in NR14 is set.

FF12 - NR12 - Channel 1 Volume Envelope (R/W)

```
Bit 7-4 - Initial Volume of envelope (0-0Fh) (0=No Sound)
Bit 3   - Envelope Direction (0=Decrease, 1=Increase)
Bit 2-0 - Number of envelope sweep (n: 0-7)
          (If zero, stop envelope operation.)
```

Length of 1 step = n*(1/64) seconds

FF13 - NR13 - Channel 1 Frequency lo (Write Only)

Lower 8 bits of 11 bit frequency (x).
Next 3 bit are in NR14 ($FF14)

FF14 - NR14 - Channel 1 Frequency hi (R/W)

```
Bit 7   - Initial (1=Restart Sound)     (Write Only)
Bit 6   - Counter/consecutive selection (Read/Write)
          (1=Stop output when length in NR11 expires)
Bit 2-0 - Frequency's higher 3 bits (x) (Write Only)
```

Frequency = 131072/(2048-x) Hz

Sound Channel 2 - Tone

This sound channel works exactly as channel 1, except that it doesn't have a Tone Envelope/Sweep Register.

FF16 - NR21 - Channel 2 Sound Length/Wave Pattern Duty (R/W)

```
Bit 7-6 - Wave Pattern Duty (Read/Write)
Bit 5-0 - Sound length data (Write Only) (t1: 0-63)
```

Wave Duty:

```
00: 12.5% ( _-------_-------_------- )
01: 25%   ( __------__------__------ )
10: 50%   ( ____----____----____---- ) (normal)
11: 75%   ( _____--_____--_____-- )
```

Sound Length = (64-t1)*(1/256) seconds
The Length value is used only if Bit 6 in NR24 is set.

FF17 - NR22 - Channel 2 Volume Envelope (R/W)
```
  Bit 7-4 - Initial Volume of envelope (0-0Fh) (0=No Sound)
  Bit 3   - Envelope Direction (0=Decrease, 1=Increase)
  Bit 2-0 - Number of envelope sweep (n: 0-7)
            (If zero, stop envelope operation.)
```
Length of 1 step = n*(1/64) seconds

FF18 - NR23 - Channel 2 Frequency lo data (W)
Frequency's lower 8 bits of 11 bit data (x).
Next 3 bits are in NR24 ($FF19).

FF19 - NR24 - Channel 2 Frequency hi data (R/W)
```
  Bit 7   - Initial (1=Restart Sound)      (Write Only)
  Bit 6   - Counter/consecutive selection (Read/Write)
            (1=Stop output when length in NR21 expires)
  Bit 2-0 - Frequency's higher 3 bits (x) (Write Only)
```
Frequency = 131072/(2048-x) Hz

Sound Channel 3 - Wave Output

This channel can be used to output digital sound, the length of the sample buffer (Wave RAM) is limited to 32 digits. This sound channel can be also used to output normal tones when initializing the Wave RAM by a square wave. This channel doesn't have a volume envelope register.

FF1A - NR30 - Channel 3 Sound on/off (R/W)
```
  Bit 7 - Sound Channel 3 Off  (0=Stop, 1=Playback)  (Read/Write)
```

FF1B - NR31 - Channel 3 Sound Length
```
  Bit 7-0 - Sound length (t1: 0 - 255)
```
Sound Length = (256-t1)*(1/256) seconds
This value is used only if Bit 6 in NR34 is set.

FF1C - NR32 - Channel 3 Select output level (R/W)
```
  Bit 6-5 - Select output level (Read/Write)
```
Possible Output levels are:
```
  0: Mute (No sound)
  1: 100% Volume (Produce Wave Pattern RAM Data as it is)
  2:  50% Volume (Produce Wave Pattern RAM data shifted once to the
right)
  3:  25% Volume (Produce Wave Pattern RAM data shifted twice to the
right)
```

FF1D - NR33 - Channel 3 Frequency's lower data (W)
Lower 8 bits of an 11 bit frequency (x).

FF1E - NR34 - Channel 3 Frequency's higher data (R/W)
```
  Bit 7   - Initial (1=Restart Sound)      (Write Only)
  Bit 6   - Counter/consecutive selection (Read/Write)
            (1=Stop output when length in NR31 expires)
  Bit 2-0 - Frequency's higher 3 bits (x) (Write Only)
```
Frequency = 4194304/(64*(2048-x)) Hz = 65536/(2048-x) Hz

FF30-FF3F - Wave Pattern RAM
Contents - Waveform storage for arbitrary sound data

This storage area holds 32 4-bit samples that are played back upper 4 bits first.

Sound Channel 4 - Noise

This channel is used to output white noise. This is done by randomly switching the amplitude between high and low at a given frequency. Depending on the frequency the noise will appear 'harder' or 'softer'.

It is also possible to influence the function of the random generator, so the that the output becomes more regular, resulting in a limited ability to output Tone instead of Noise.

FF20 - NR41 - Channel 4 Sound Length (R/W)
```
  Bit 5-0 - Sound length data (t1: 0-63)
```
Sound Length = (64-t1)*(1/256) seconds
The Length value is used only if Bit 6 in NR44 is set.

FF21 - NR42 - Channel 4 Volume Envelope (R/W)
```
  Bit 7-4 - Initial Volume of envelope (0-0Fh) (0=No Sound)
  Bit 3   - Envelope Direction (0=Decrease, 1=Increase)
  Bit 2-0 - Number of envelope sweep (n: 0-7)
            (If zero, stop envelope operation.)
```
Length of 1 step = n*(1/64) seconds

FF22 - NR43 - Channel 4 Polynomial Counter (R/W)
The amplitude is randomly switched between high and low at the given frequency. A higher frequency will make the noise to appear 'softer'.
When Bit 3 is set, the output will become more regular, and some frequencies will sound more like Tone than Noise.
```
  Bit 7-4 - Shift Clock Frequency (s)
  Bit 3   - Counter Step/Width (0=15 bits, 1=7 bits)
  Bit 2-0 - Dividing Ratio of Frequencies (r)
```
Frequency = 524288 Hz / r / 2^(s+1) ;For r=0 assume r=0.5 instead

FF23 - NR44 - Channel 4 Counter/consecutive; Inital (R/W)

```
Bit 7   - Initial (1=Restart Sound)      (Write Only)
Bit 6   - Counter/consecutive selection (Read/Write)
          (1=Stop output when length in NR41 expires)
```

Sound Control Registers

FF24 - NR50 - Channel control / ON-OFF / Volume (R/W)

The volume bits specify the "Master Volume" for Left/Right sound output.

```
Bit 7   - Output Vin to SO2 terminal (1=Enable)
Bit 6-4 - SO2 output level (volume)  (0-7)
Bit 3   - Output Vin to SO1 terminal (1=Enable)
Bit 2-0 - SO1 output level (volume)  (0-7)
```

The Vin signal is received from the game cartridge bus, allowing external hardware in the cartridge to supply a fifth sound channel, additionally to the gameboys internal four channels. As far as I know this feature isn't used by any existing games.

FF25 - NR51 - Selection of Sound output terminal (R/W)

```
Bit 7 - Output sound 4 to SO2 terminal
Bit 6 - Output sound 3 to SO2 terminal
Bit 5 - Output sound 2 to SO2 terminal
Bit 4 - Output sound 1 to SO2 terminal
Bit 3 - Output sound 4 to SO1 terminal
Bit 2 - Output sound 3 to SO1 terminal
Bit 1 - Output sound 2 to SO1 terminal
Bit 0 - Output sound 1 to SO1 terminal
```

FF26 - NR52 - Sound on/off

If your GB programs don't use sound then write 00h to this register to save 16% or more on GB power consumption. Disabeling the sound controller by clearing Bit 7 destroys the contents of all sound registers. Also, it is not possible to access any sound registers (execpt FF26) while the sound controller is disabled.

```
Bit 7 - All sound on/off  (0: stop all sound circuits) (Read/Write)
Bit 3 - Sound 4 ON flag (Read Only)
Bit 2 - Sound 3 ON flag (Read Only)
Bit 1 - Sound 2 ON flag (Read Only)
Bit 0 - Sound 1 ON flag (Read Only)
```

Bits 0-3 of this register are read only status bits, writing to these bits does NOT enable/disable sound. The flags get set when sound output is restarted by setting the Initial flag (Bit 7 in NR14-NR44), the flag remains set until the sound length has expired (if enabled). A volume envelopes which has decreased to zero volume will NOT cause the sound flag to go off.

Joypad Input

FF00 - P1/JOYP - Joypad (R/W)

The eight gameboy buttons/direction keys are arranged in form of a 2x4 matrix. Select either button or direction keys by writing to this register, then read-out bit 0-3.

```
Bit 7 - Not used
Bit 6 - Not used
Bit 5 - P15 Select Button Keys      (0=Select)
Bit 4 - P14 Select Direction Keys   (0=Select)
Bit 3 - P13 Input Down  or Start    (0=Pressed) (Read Only)
Bit 2 - P12 Input Up    or Select   (0=Pressed) (Read Only)
Bit 1 - P11 Input Left  or Button B (0=Pressed) (Read Only)
Bit 0 - P10 Input Right or Button A (0=Pressed) (Read Only)
```

Note: Most programs are repeatedly reading from this port several times (the first reads used as short delay, allowing the inputs to stabilize, and only the value from the last read actually used).

Usage in SGB software
Beside for normal joypad input, SGB games mis-use the joypad register to output SGB command packets to the SNES, also, SGB programs may read out gamepad states from up to four different joypads which can be connected to the SNES.
See SGB description for details.

INT 60 - Joypad Interrupt
Joypad interrupt is requested when any of the above Input lines changes from High to Low. Generally this should happen when a key becomes pressed (provided that the button/direction key is enabled by above Bit4/5), however, because of switch bounce, one or more High to Low transitions are usually produced both when pressing or releasing a key.

Using the Joypad Interrupt
It's more or less useless for programmers, even when selecting both buttons and direction keys simultaneously it still cannot recognize all keystrokes, because in that case a bit might be already held low by a button key, and pressing the corresponding direction key would thus cause no difference. The only meaningful purpose of the keystroke interrupt would be to terminate STOP (low power) standby state.
Also, the joypad interrupt does not appear to work with CGB and GBA hardware (the STOP function can be still terminated by joypad keystrokes though).

Serial Data Transfer (Link Cable)

FF01 - SB - Serial transfer data (R/W)
8 Bits of data to be read/written

FF02 - SC - Serial Transfer Control (R/W)
```
Bit 7 - Transfer Start Flag (0=No Transfer, 1=Start)
Bit 1 - Clock Speed (0=Normal, 1=Fast) ** CGB Mode Only **
Bit 0 - Shift Clock (0=External Clock, 1=Internal Clock)
```

The clock signal specifies the rate at which the eight data bits in SB (FF01) are transferred. When the gameboy is communicating with another gameboy (or other computer) then either one must supply internal clock, and the other one must use external clock.

Internal Clock
In Non-CGB Mode the gameboy supplies an internal clock of 8192Hz only (allowing to transfer about 1 KByte per second). In CGB Mode four internal clock rates are available, depending on Bit 1 of the SC register, and on whether the CGB Double Speed Mode is used:

```
    8192Hz -  1KB/s - Bit 1 cleared, Normal
   16384Hz -  2KB/s - Bit 1 cleared, Double Speed Mode
  262144Hz - 32KB/s - Bit 1 set,     Normal
  524288Hz - 64KB/s - Bit 1 set,     Double Speed Mode
```

External Clock
The external clock is typically supplied by another gameboy, but might be supplied by another computer (for example if connected to a PCs parallel port), in that case the external clock may have any speed. Even the old/monochrome gameboy is reported to recognizes external clocks of up to 500KHz. And there is no limitiation into the other direction - even when suppling an external clock speed of "1 bit per month", then the gameboy will still eagerly wait for the next bit(s) to be transferred. It isn't required that the clock pulses are sent at an regular interval either.

Timeouts
When using external clock then the transfer will not complete until the last bit is received. In case that the second gameboy isn't supplying a clock signal, if it gets turned off, or if there is no second gameboy connected at all) then transfer will never complete. For this reason the transfer procedure should use a timeout counter, and abort the communication if no response has been received during the timeout interval.

Delays and Synchronization
The gameboy that is using internal clock should always execute a small delay between each transfer, in order to ensure that the opponent gameboy has enough time to prepare itself for the next transfer, ie. the gameboy with external clock must have set its transfer start bit before the gameboy with internal clock starts the transfer. Alternately, the two gameboys could switch between internal and external clock for each transferred byte to ensure synchronization.

Transfer is initiated by setting the Transfer Start Flag. This bit is automatically set to 0 at the end of Transfer. Reading this bit can be used to determine if the transfer is still active.

INT 58 - Serial Interrupt
When the transfer has completed (ie. after sending/receiving 8 bits, if any) then an interrupt is requested by setting Bit 3 of the IF Register (FF0F). When that interrupt is enabled, then the Serial Interrupt vector at 0058 is called.

XXXXXX...

Transmitting and receiving serial data is done simultaneously. The received data is automatically stored in SB.

The serial I/O port on the Gameboy is a very simple setup and is crude compared to standard RS-232 (IBM-PC) or RS-485 (Macintosh) serial ports. There are no start or stop bits.

During a transfer, a byte is shifted in at the same time that a byte is shifted out. The rate of the shift is determined by whether the clock source is internal or external.
The most significant bit is shifted in and out first.

When the internal clock is selected, it drives the clock pin on the game link port and it stays high when not used. During a transfer it will go low eight times to clock in/out each bit.

The state of the last bit shifted out determines the state of the output line until another transfer takes place.

If a serial transfer with internal clock is performed and no external GameBoy is present, a value of $FF will be received in the transfer.

The following code causes $75 to be shifted out the serial port and a byte to be shifted into $FF01:

```
ld   a,$75
ld  ($FF01),a
ld   a,$81
ld  ($FF02),a
```

Timer and Divider Registers

FF04 - DIV - Divider Register (R/W)
This register is incremented at rate of 16384Hz (~16779Hz on SGB). In CGB Double Speed Mode it is incremented twice as fast, ie. at 32768Hz. Writing any value to this register resets it to 00h.

FF05 - TIMA - Timer counter (R/W)
This timer is incremented by a clock frequency specified by the TAC register ($FF07). When the value overflows (gets bigger than FFh) then it will be reset to the value specified in TMA (FF06), and an interrupt will be requested, as described below.

FF06 - TMA - Timer Modulo (R/W)
When the TIMA overflows, this data will be loaded.

FF07 - TAC - Timer Control (R/W)

```
Bit 2    - Timer Stop  (0=Stop, 1=Start)
Bits 1-0 - Input Clock Select
           00:   4096 Hz   (~4194 Hz SGB)
           01: 262144 Hz   (~268400 Hz SGB)
           10:  65536 Hz   (~67110 Hz SGB)
           11:  16384 Hz   (~16780 Hz SGB)
```

INT 50 - Timer Interrupt

Each time when the timer overflows (ie. when TIMA gets bigger than FFh), then an interrupt is requested by setting Bit 2 in the IF Register (FF0F). When that interrupt is enabled, then the CPU will execute it by calling the timer interrupt vector at 0050h.

Note

The above described Timer is the built-in timer in the gameboy. It has nothing to do with the MBC3s battery buffered Real Time Clock - that's a completely different thing, described in the chapter about Memory Banking Controllers.

Interrupts

IME - Interrupt Master Enable Flag (Write Only)

```
0 - Disable all Interrupts
1 - Enable all Interrupts that are enabled in IE Register (FFFF)
```

The IME flag is used to disable all interrupts, overriding any enabled bits in the IE Register. It isn't possible to access the IME flag by using a I/O address, instead IME is accessed directly from the CPU, by the following opcodes/operations:

```
EI      ;Enable Interrupts  (ie. IME=1)
DI      ;Disable Interrupts (ie. IME=0)
RETI    ;Enable Ints & Return (same as the opcode combination EI, RET)
<INT>   ;Disable Ints & Call to Interrupt Vector
```

Whereas <INT> means the operation which is automatically executed by the CPU when it executes an interrupt.

FFFF - IE - Interrupt Enable (R/W)

```
Bit 0: V-Blank  Interrupt Enable  (INT 40h)  (1=Enable)
Bit 1: LCD STAT Interrupt Enable  (INT 48h)  (1=Enable)
Bit 2: Timer    Interrupt Enable  (INT 50h)  (1=Enable)
Bit 3: Serial   Interrupt Enable  (INT 58h)  (1=Enable)
Bit 4: Joypad   Interrupt Enable  (INT 60h)  (1=Enable)
```

FF0F - IF - Interrupt Flag (R/W)

```
Bit 0: V-Blank  Interrupt Request (INT 40h)  (1=Request)
Bit 1: LCD STAT Interrupt Request (INT 48h)  (1=Request)
Bit 2: Timer    Interrupt Request (INT 50h)  (1=Request)
Bit 3: Serial   Interrupt Request (INT 58h)  (1=Request)
Bit 4: Joypad   Interrupt Request (INT 60h)  (1=Request)
```

When an interrupt signal changes from low to high, then the corresponding bit in the IF register becomes set. For example, Bit 0 becomes set when the LCD controller enters into the V-Blank period.

Interrupt Requests
Any set bits in the IF register are only <requesting> an interrupt to be executed. The actual <execution> happens only if both the IME flag, and the corresponding bit in the IE register are set, otherwise the interrupt 'waits' until both IME and IE allow its execution.

Interrupt Execution
When an interrupt gets executed, the corresponding bit in the IF register becomes automatically reset by the CPU, and the IME flag becomes cleared (disabeling any further interrupts until the program re-enables the interrupts, typically by using the RETI instruction), and the corresponding Interrupt Vector (that are the addresses in range 0040h-0060h, as shown in IE and IF register decriptions above) becomes called.

Manually Requesting/Discarding Interrupts
As the CPU automatically sets and clears the bits in the IF register it is usually not required to write to the IF register. However, the user may still do that in order to manually request (or discard) interrupts. As for real interrupts, a manually requested interrupt isn't executed unless/until IME and IE allow its execution.

Interrupt Priorities
In the following three situations it might happen that more than 1 bit in the IF register are set, requesting more than one interrupt at once:

```
  1) More than one interrupt signal changed from Low
     to High at the same time.
  2) Several interrupts have been requested during a
     time in which IME/IE didn't allow these interrupts
     to be executed directly.
  3) The user has written a value with several "1" bits
     (for example 1Fh) to the IF register.
```

Provided that IME and IE allow the execution of more than one of the requested interrupts, then the interrupt with the highest priority becomes executed first. The priorities are ordered as the bits in the IE and IF registers, Bit 0 (V-Blank) having the highest priority, and Bit 4 (Joypad) having the lowest priority.

Nested Interrupts
The CPU automatically disables all other interrupts by setting IME=0 when it executes an interrupt. Usually IME remains zero until the interrupt procedure returns (and sets IME=1 by the RETI instruction). However, if you want any other interrupts of lower or higher (or same) priority to be allowed to be executed from inside of the interrupt procedure, then you can place an EI instruction into the interrupt procedure.

CGB Registers

Forward
This chapter describes only CGB (Color Gameboy) registers that didn't fit into normal categories - most CGB registers are described in the chapter about Video Display (Color Palettes, VRAM Bank, VRAM DMA Transfers, and changed meaning of Bit 0 of LCDC Control register). Also, a changed bit is noted in the chapter about the Serial/Link port.

Unlocking CGB functions
When using any CGB registers (including those in the Video/Link chapters), you must first unlock CGB features by changing byte 0143h in the cartridge header. Typically use a value of 80h for games which support both CGB and monochrome gameboys, and C0h for games which work on CGBs only. Otherwise, the CGB will operate in monochrome "Non CGB" compatibility mode.

Detecting CGB (and GBA) functions
CGB hardware can be detected by examing the CPU accumulator (A-register) directly after startup. A value of 11h indicates CGB (or GBA) hardware, if so, CGB functions can be used (if unlocked, see above).
When A=11h, you may also examine Bit 0 of the CPUs B-Register to separate between CGB (bit cleared) and GBA (bit set), by that detection it is possible to use 'repaired' color palette data matching for GBA displays.

FF4D - KEY1 - CGB Mode Only - Prepare Speed Switch
```
  Bit 7: Current Speed      (0=Normal, 1=Double) (Read Only)
  Bit 0: Prepare Speed Switch (0=No, 1=Prepare) (Read/Write)
```
This register is used to prepare the gameboy to switch between CGB Double Speed Mode and Normal Speed Mode. The actual speed switch is performed by executing a STOP command after Bit 0 has been set. After that Bit 0 will be cleared automatically, and the gameboy will operate at the 'other' speed. The recommended speed switching procedure in pseudo code would be:
```
  IF KEY1_BIT7 <> DESIRED_SPEED THEN
    IE=00H        ;(FFFF)=00h
    JOYP=30H      ;(FF00)=30h
    KEY1=01H      ;(FF4D)=01h
    STOP          ;STOP
  ENDIF
```
The CGB is operating in Normal Speed Mode when it is turned on. Note that using the Double Speed Mode increases the power consumption, it would be recommended to use Single Speed whenever possible. However, the display will flicker (white) for a moment during speed switches, so this cannot be done permanently.
In Double Speed Mode the following will operate twice as fast as normal:
```
  The CPU (2.10 MHz, 1 Cycle = approx. 0.5us)
  Timer and Divider Registers
  Serial Port (Link Cable)
  DMA Transfer to OAM
```
And the following will keep operating as usual:
```
  LCD Video Controller
  HDMA Transfer to VRAM
```

```
   All Sound Timings and Frequencies
```

FF56 - RP - CGB Mode Only - Infrared Communications Port
This register allows to input and output data through the CGBs built-in Infrared Port.
When reading data, bit 6 and 7 must be set (and obviously Bit 0 must be cleared - if you
don't want to receive your own gameboys IR signal). After sending or receiving data you
should reset the register to 00h to reduce battery power consumption again.
```
  Bit 0:   Write Data   (0=LED Off, 1=LED On)               (Read/Write)
  Bit 1:   Read Data    (0=Receiving IR Signal, 1=Normal) (Read Only)
  Bit 6-7: Data Read Enable (0=Disable, 3=Enable)           (Read/Write)
```
Note that the receiver will adapt itself to the normal level of IR pollution in the air, so if
you would send a LED ON signal for a longer period, then the receiver would treat that
as normal (=OFF) after a while. For example, a Philips TV Remote Control sends a series
of 32 LED ON/OFF pulses (length 10us ON, 17.5us OFF each) instead of a permanent
880us LED ON signal.
Even though being generally CGB compatible, the GBA does not include an infra-red
port.

FF70 - SVBK - CGB Mode Only - WRAM Bank
In CGB Mode 32 KBytes internal RAM are available. This memory is divided into 8
banks of 4 KBytes each. Bank 0 is always available in memory at C000-CFFF, Bank 1-7
can be selected into the address space at D000-DFFF.
```
  Bit 0-2  Select WRAM Bank (Read/Write)
```
Writing a value of 01h-07h will select Bank 1-7, writing a value of 00h will select Bank 1
either.

FF6C - Undocumented (FEh) - Bit 0 (Read/Write) - CGB Mode Only
FF72 - Undocumented (00h) - Bit 0-7 (Read/Write)
FF73 - Undocumented (00h) - Bit 0-7 (Read/Write)
FF74 - Undocumented (00h) - Bit 0-7 (Read/Write) - CGB Mode Only
FF75 - Undocumented (8Fh) - Bit 4-6 (Read/Write)
FF76 - Undocumented (00h) - Always 00h (Read Only)
FF77 - Undocumented (00h) - Always 00h (Read Only)
These are undocumented CGB Registers. The numbers in brackets () indicate the initial
values. Purpose of these registers is unknown (if any). Registers FF6C and FF74 are
always FFh if the CGB is in Non CGB Mode.

SGB Functions

General Information
SGB Description
SGB Unlocking and Detecting SGB Functions
SGB Command Packet Transfers
SGB VRAM Transfers
SGB Command Summary

[SGB Color Palettes Overview](#)

SGB Commands
[SGB Palette Commands](#)
[SGB Color Attribute Commands](#)
[SGB Sound Functions](#)
[SGB System Control Commands](#)
[SGB Multiplayer Command](#)
[SGB Border and OBJ Commands](#)

SGB Description

General Description
Basically, the SGB (Super Gameboy) is an adapter cartridge that allows to play gameboy games on a SNES (Super Nintendo Entertainment System) gaming console. In detail, you plug the gameboy cartridge into the SGB cartridge, then plug the SGB cartridge into the SNES, and then connect the SNES to your TV Set. In result, games can be played and viewed on the TV Set, and are controlled by using the SNES joypad(s).

More Technical Description
The SGB cartridge just contains a normal gameboy CPU and normal gameboy video controller. Normally the video signal from this controller would be sent to the LCD screen, however, in this special case the SNES read out the video signal and displays it on the TV set by using a special SNES BIOS ROM which is located in the SGB cartridge. Also, normal gameboy sound output is forwared to the SNES and output to the TV Set, vice versa, joypad input is forwared from the SNES controller(s) to the gameboy joypad inputs.

Normal Monochrome Games
Any gameboy games which have been designed for normal monochrome handheld gameboys will work with the SGB hardware as well. The SGB will apply a four color palette to these games by replacing the normal four grayshades. The 160x144 pixel gamescreen is displayed in the middle of the 256x224 pixel SNES screen (the unused area is filled by a screen border bitmap). The user may access built-in menues, allowing to change color palette data, to select between several pre-defined borders, etc.

Games that have been designed to support SGB functions may also access the following additional features:

Colorized Game Screen
There's limited ability to colorize the gamescreen by assigning custom color palettes to each 20x18 display characters, however, this works mainly for static display data such like title screens or status bars, the 20x18 color attribute map is non-scrollable, and it is not possible to assign separate colors to moveable foreground sprites (OBJs), so that animated screen regions will be typically restricted to using a single palette of four colors

only.

SNES Foreground Sprites
Up to 24 foreground sprites (OBJs) of 8x8 or 16x16 pixels, 16 colors can be displayed. When replacing (or just overlaying) the normal gameboy OBJs by SNES OBJs it'd be thus possible to display OBJs with other colors than normal background area. This method doesn't appear to be very popular, even though it appears to be quite easy to implement, however, the bottommost character line of the gamescreen will be masked out because this area is used to transfer OAM data to the SNES.

The SGB Border
The possibly most popular and most impressive feature is to replace the default SGB screen border by a custom bitmap which is stored in the game cartridge.

Multiple Joypads
Up to four joypads can be conected to the SNES, and SGB software may read-out each of these joypads separately, allowing up to four players to play the same game simultaneously. Unlike for multiplayer handheld games, this requires only one game cartridge and only one SGB/SNES, and no link cables are required, the downside is that all players must share the same display screen.

Sound Functions
Beside for normal gameboy sound, a number of digital sound effects is pre-defined in the SNES BIOS, these effects may be accessed quite easily. Programmers whom are familiar with SNES sounds may also access the SNES sound chip, or use the SNES MIDI engine directly in order to produce other sound effects or music.

Taking Control of the SNES CPU
Finally, it is possible to write program code or data into SNES memory, and to execute such program code by using the SNES CPU.

SGB System Clock
Because the SGB is synchronized to the SNES CPU, the gameboy system clock is directly chained to the SNES system clock. In result, the gameboy CPU, video controller, timers, and sound frequencies will be all operated approx 2.4% faster as by normal gameboys.
Basically, this should be no problem, and the game will just run a little bit faster. However sensitive musicians may notice that sound frequencies are a bit too high, programs that support SGB functions may avoid this effect by reducing frequencies of gameboy sounds when having detected SGB hardware.
Also, I think that I've heard that SNES models which use a 50Hz display refresh rate (rather than 60Hz) are resulting in respectively slower SGB/gameboy timings ???

SGB Unlocking and Detecting SGB Functions

Cartridge Header
SGB games are required to have a cartridge header with Nintendo and proper checksum just as normal gameboy games. Also, two special entries must be set in order to unlock SGB functions:

```
146h - SGB Flag - Must be set to 03h for SGB games
14Bh - Old Licensee Code - Must be set 33h for SGB games
```

When these entries aren't set, the game will still work just like all 'monochrome' gameboy games, but it cannot access any of the special SGB functions.

Detecting SGB hardware
The recommended detection method is to send a MLT_REQ command which enables two (or four) joypads. A normal handheld gameboy will ignore this command, a SGB will now return incrementing joypad IDs each time when deselecting keyboard lines (see MLT_REQ description for details).
Now read-out joypad state/IDs several times, and if the ID-numbers are changing, then it is a SGB (a normal gameboy would typically always return 0Fh as ID). Finally, when not intending to use more than one joypad, send another MLT_REQ command in order to re-disable the multi-controller mode.
Detection works regardless of whether and how many joypads are physically connected to the SNES. However, detection works only when having unlocked SGB functions in the cartridge header, as described above.

Separating between SGB and SGB2
It is also possible to separate between SGB and SGB2 models by examining the inital value of the accumulator (A-register) directly after startup.

```
01h  SGB or Normal Gameboy (DMG)
FFh  SGB2 or Pocket Gameboy
11h  CGB or GBA
```

Because values 01h and FFh are shared for both handhelds and SGBs, it is still required to use the above MLT_REQ detection procedure. As far as I know the SGB2 doesn't have any extra features which'd require separate SGB2 detection except for curiosity purposes, for example, the game "Tetris DX" chooses to display an alternate SGB border on SGB2s.

Reportedly, some SGB models include link ports (just like handheld gameboy) (my own SGB does not have such an port), possibly this feature is available in SGB2-type models only ???

SGB Command Packet Transfers

Command packets (aka Register Files) are transferred from the gameboy to the SNES by using P14 and P15 output lines of the JOYPAD register (FF00h), these lines are normally used to select the two rows in the gameboy keyboard matrix (which still works).

Transferring Bits
A command packet transfer must be initiated by setting both P14 and P15 to LOW, this will reset and start the SNES packet receiving program. Data is then transferred (LSB first), setting P14=LOW will indicate a "0" bit, and setting P15=LOW will indicate a "1" bit. For example:

```
      RESET 0   0   1   1   0   1   0
  P14  --_---_---_-----------_-------_--...
  P15  --_-----------_---_-------_------...
```

Data and reset pulses must be kept LOW for at least 5us. P14 and P15 must be kept both HIGH for at least 15us between any pulses.
Obviously, it'd be no good idea to access the JOYPAD register during the transfer, for example, in case that your VBlank interrupt procedure reads-out joypad states each frame, be sure to disable that interrupt during the transfer (or disable only the joypad procedure by using a software flag).

Transferring Packets
Each packet is invoked by a RESET pulse, then 128 bits of data are transferred (16 bytes, LSB of first byte first), and finally, a "0"-bit must be transferred as stop bit. The structure of normal packets is:

```
  1 PULSE Reset
  1 BYTE  Command Code*8+Length
 15 BYTES Parameter Data
  1 BIT   Stop Bit (0)
```

The above 'Length' indicates the total number of packets (1-7, including the first packet) which will be sent, ie. if more than 15 parameter bytes are used, then further packet(s) will follow, as such:

```
  1 PULSE Reset
 16 BYTES Parameter Data
  1 BIT   Stop Bit (0)
```

By using all 7 packets, up to 111 data bytes (15+16*6) may be sent.
Unused bytes at the end of the last packet must be set to zero.
A 60ms (4 frames) delay should be invoked between each packet transfer.

SGB VRAM Transfers

Overview
Beside for the packet transfer method, larger data blocks of 4KBytes can be transferred by using the video signal. These transfers are invoked by first sending one of the commands with the ending _TRN (by using normal packet transfer), the 4K data block is then read-out by the SNES from gameboy display memory during the next frame.

Transfer Data
Normally, transfer data should be stored at 8000h-8FFFh in gameboy VRAM, even though the SNES receives the data in from display scanlines, it will automatically re-produce the same ordering of bits and bytes, as being originally stored at 8000h-8FFFh in gameboy memory.

Preparing the Display
The above method works only when recursing the following things: BG Map must display unsigned characters 00h-FFh on the screen; 00h..13h in first line, 14h..27h in next line, etc. The gameboy display must be enabled, the display may not be scrolled, OBJ sprites should not overlap the background tiles, the BGP palette register must be set to E4h.

Transfer Time
Note that the transfer data should be prepared in VRAM <before> sending the transfer command packet. The actual transfer starts at the beginning of the next frame after the command has been sent, and the transfer ends at the end of the 5th frame after the command has been sent (not counting the frame in which the command has been sent).

Avoiding Screen Garbage
The display will contain 'garbage' during the transfer, this dirt-effect can be avoided by freezing the screen (in the state which has been displayed before the transfer) by using the MASK_EN command.
Of course, this works only when actually executing the game on a SGB (and not on normal handheld gameboys), it'd be thus required to detect the presence of SGB hardware before blindly sending VRAM data.

SGB Command Summary

SGB System Command Table
```
Code Name       Expl.
00   PAL01      Set SGB Palette 0,1 Data
01   PAL23      Set SGB Palette 2,3 Data
02   PAL03      Set SGB Palette 0,3 Data
03   PAL12      Set SGB Palette 1,2 Data
04   ATTR_BLK   "Block" Area Designation Mode
05   ATTR_LIN   "Line" Area Designation Mode
06   ATTR_DIV   "Divide" Area Designation Mode
07   ATTR_CHR   "1CHR" Area Designation Mode
08   SOUND      Sound On/Off
09   SOU_TRN    Transfer Sound PRG/DATA
0A   PAL_SET    Set SGB Palette Indirect
0B   PAL_TRN    Set System Color Palette Data
0C   ATRC_EN    Enable/disable Attraction Mode
0D   TEST_EN    Speed Function
0E   ICON_EN    SGB Function
0F   DATA_SND   SUPER NES WRAM Transfer 1
10   DATA_TRN   SUPER NES WRAM Transfer 2
11   MLT_REG    Controller 2 Request
12   JUMP       Set SNES Program Counter
13   CHR_TRN    Transfer Character Font Data
14   PCT_TRN    Set Screen Data Color Data
15   ATTR_TRN   Set Attribute from ATF
16   ATTR_SET   Set Data to ATF
```

```
17    MASK_EN    Game Boy Window Mask
18    OBJ_TRN    Super NES OBJ Mode
```

SGB Color Palettes Overview

Available SNES Palettes
The SGB/SNES provides 8 palettes of 16 colors each, each color may be defined out of a selection of 34768 colors (15 bit). Palettes 0-3 are used to colorize the gamescreen, only the first four colors of each of these palettes are used. Palettes 4-7 are used for the SGB Border, all 16 colors of each of these palettes may be used.

Color 0 Restriction
Color 0 of each of the eight palettes is transparent, causing the backdrop color to be displayed instead. The backdrop color is typically defined by the most recently color being assigned to Color 0 (regardless of the palette number being used for that operation). Effectively, gamescreen palettes can have only three custom colors each, and SGB border palettes only 15 colors each, additionally, color 0 can be used for for all palettes, which will then all share the same color though.

Translation of Grayshades into Colors
Because the SGB/SNES reads out the gameboy video controllers display signal, it translates the different grayshades from the signal into SNES colors as such:
```
White       -->  Color 0
Light Gray  -->  Color 1
Dark Gray   -->  Color 2
Black       -->  Color 3
```
Note that gameboy colors 0-3 are assigned to user-selectable grayshades by the gameboys BGP, OBP1, and OBP2 registers. There is thus no fixed relationship between gameboy colors 0-3 and SNES colors 0-3.

Using Gameboy BGP/OBP Registers
A direct translation of color 0-3 into color 0-3 may be produced by setting BGP/OBP registers to a value of 0E4h each. However, in case that your program uses black background for example, then you may internally assign background as "White" at the gameboy side by BGP/OBP registers (which is then interpreted as SNES color 0, which is shared for all SNES palettes). The advantage is that you may define Color 0 as Black at the SNES side, and may assign custom colors for Colors 1-3 of each SNES palette.

System Color Palette Memory
Beside for the actually visible palettes, up to 512 palettes of 4 colors each may be defined in SNES RAM. Basically, this is completely irrelevant because the palettes are just stored in RAM whithout any relationship to the displayed picture, anyways, these pre-defined colors may be transferred to actually visible palettes slightly faster as when transferring palette data by separate command packets.

SGB Palette Commands

SGB Command 00h - PAL01
Transmit color data for SGB palette 0, color 0-3, and for SGB palette 1, color 1-3 (without separate color 0).

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=01h)
1-E    Color Data for 7 colors of 2 bytes (16bit) each:
         Bit 0-4   - Red Intensity   (0-31)
         Bit 5-9   - Green Intensity (0-31)
         Bit 10-14 - Blue Intensity  (0-31)
         Bit 15    - Not used (zero)
F      Not used (00h)
```
The value transferred as color 0 will be applied for all eight palettes.

SGB Command 01h - PAL23
Same as above PAL01, but for Palettes 2 and 3 respectively.

SGB Command 02h - PAL03
Same as above PAL01, but for Palettes 0 and 3 respectively.

SGB Command 03h - PAL12
Same as above PAL01, but for Palettes 1 and 2 respectively.

SGB Command 0Ah - PAL_SET
Used to copy pre-defined palette data from SGB system color palette to actual SGB palette.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1-2    System Palette number for SGB Color Palette 0 (0-511)
3-4    System Palette number for SGB Color Palette 1 (0-511)
5-6    System Palette number for SGB Color Palette 2 (0-511)
7-8    System Palette number for SGB Color Palette 3 (0-511)
9      Attribute File
         Bit 0-5 - Attribute File Number (00h-2Ch) (Used only if
Bit7=1)
         Bit 6   - Cancel Mask          (0=No change, 1=Yes)
         Bit 7   - Use Attribute File   (0=No, 1=Apply above ATF
Number)
A-F    Not used (zero)
```
Before using this function, System Palette data should be initialized by PAL_TRN command, and (when used) Attribute File data should be initialized by ATTR_TRN.

SGB Command 0Bh - PAL_TRN
Used to initialize SGB system color palettes in SNES RAM.
System color palette memory contains 512 pre-defined palettes, these palettes do not directly affect the display, however, the PAL_SET command may be later used to transfer four of these 'logical' palettes to actual visible 'physical' SGB palettes. Also, the

OBJ_TRN function will use groups of 4 System Color Palettes (4*4 colors) for SNES OBJ palettes (16 colors).

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1-F    Not used (zero)
```

The palette data is sent by VRAM-Transfer (4 KBytes).

```
000-FFF  Data for System Color Palette 0-511
```

Each Palette consists of four 16bit-color definitions (8 bytes).
Note: The data is stored at 3000h-3FFFh in SNES memory.

SGB Color Attribute Commands

SGB Command 04h - ATTR_BLK
Used to specify color attributes for the inside or outside of one or more rectangular screen regions.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (length=1..7)
1      Number of Data Sets (01h..12h)
2-7    Data Set #1
          Byte 0 - Control Code (0-7)
            Bit 0 - Change Colors inside of surrounded area      (1=Yes)
            Bit 1 - Change Colors of surrounding character line (1=Yes)
            Bit 2 - Change Colors outside of surrounded area     (1=Yes)
            Bit 3-7 - Not used (zero)
            Exception: When changing only the Inside or Outside, then
the
            Surrounding line becomes automatically changed to same
color.
          Byte 1 - Color Palette Designation
            Bit 0-1 - Palette Number for inside of surrounded area
            Bit 2-3 - Palette Number for surrounding character line
            Bit 4-5 - Palette Number for outside of surrounded area
            Bit 6-7 - Not used (zero)
          Data Set Byte 2 - Coordinate X1 (left)
          Data Set Byte 3 - Coordinate Y1 (upper)
          Data Set Byte 4 - Coordinate X2 (right)
          Data Set Byte 5 - Coordinate Y2 (lower)
            Specifies the coordinates of the surrounding rectangle.
8-D    Data Set #2 (if any)
E-F    Data Set #3 (continued at 0-3 in next packet) (if any)
```

When sending three or more data sets, data is continued in further packet(s). Unused bytes at the end of the last packet should be set to zero. The format of the separate Data Sets is described below.

SGB Command 05h - ATTR_LIN
Used to specify color attributes of one or more horizontal or vertical character lines.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (length=1..7)
1      Number of Data Sets (01h..6Eh) (one byte each)
```

```
  2       Data Set #1
            Bit 0-4 - Line Number      (X- or Y-coordinate, depending on
bit 7)
            Bit 5-6 - Palette Number (0-3)
            Bit 7   - H/V Mode Bit    (0=Vertical line, 1=Horizontal Line)
  3       Data Set #2 (if any)
  4       Data Set #3 (if any)
  etc.
```

When sending 15 or more data sets, data is continued in further packet(s). Unused bytes at the end of the last packet should be set to zero. The format of the separate Data Sets (one byte each) is described below.

The length of each line reaches from one end of the screen to the other end. In case that some lines overlap each other, then lines from lastmost data sets will overwrite lines from previous data sets.

SGB Command 06h - ATTR_DIV

Used to split the screen into two halfes, and to assign separate color attributes to each half, and to the division line between them.

```
  Byte  Content
  0     Command*8+Length   (fixed length=1)
  1     Color Palette Numbers and H/V Mode Bit
           Bit 0-1  Palette Number below/right of division line
           Bit 2-3  Palette Number above/left of division line
           Bit 4-5  Palette Number for division line
           Bit 6    H/V Mode Bit  (0=split left/right, 1=split
above/below)
  2     X- or Y-Coordinate (depending on H/V bit)
  3-F   Not used (zero)
```

SGB Command 07h - ATTR_CHR

Used to specify color attributes for separate characters.

```
  Byte  Content
  0     Command*8+Length (length=1..6)
  1     Beginning X-Coordinate
  2     Beginning Y-Coordinate
  3-4   Number of Data Sets (1-360)
  5     Writing Style   (0=Left to Right, 1=Top to Bottom)
  6     Data Sets 1-4   (Set 1 in MSBs, Set 4 in LSBs)
  7     Data Sets 5-8   (if any)
  8     Data Sets 9-12  (if any)
  etc.
```

When sending 41 or more data sets, data is continued in further packet(s). Unused bytes at the end of the last packet should be set to zero. Each data set consists of two bits, indicating the palette number for one character.

Depending on the writing style, data sets are written from left to right, or from top to bottom. In either case the function wraps to the next row/column when reaching the end of the screen.

SGB Command 15h - ATTR_TRN

Used to initialize Attribute Files (ATFs) in SNES RAM. Each ATF consists of 20x18

color attributes for the gameboy screen. This function does not directly affect display attributes. Instead, one of the defined ATFs may be copied to actual display memory at a later time by using ATTR_SET or PAL_SET functions.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1-F    Not used (zero)
```

The ATF data is sent by VRAM-Transfer (4 KBytes).

```
000-FD1   Data for ATF0 through ATF44 (4050 bytes)
FD2-FFF   Not used
```

Each ATF consists of 90 bytes, that are 5 bytes (20x2bits) for each of the 18 character lines of the gameboy window. The two most significant bits of the first byte define the color attribute (0-3) for the first character of the first line, the next two bits the next character, and so on.

SGB Command 16h - ATTR_SET
Used to transfer attributes from Attribute File (ATF) to gameboy window.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1      Attribute File Number (00-2Ch), Bit 6=Cancel Mask
2-F    Not used (zero)
```

When above Bit 6 is set, the gameboy screen becomes re-enabled after the transfer (in case it has been disabled/frozen by MASK_EN command).
Note: The same functions may be (optionally) also included in PAL_SET commands, as described in the chapter about Color Palette Commands.

SGB Sound Functions

SGB Command 08h - SOUND
Used to start/stop internal sound effect, start/stop sound using internal tone data.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1      Sound Effect A (Port 1) Decrescendo 8bit Sound Code
2      Sound Effect B (Port 2) Sustain     8bit Sound Code
3      Sound Effect Attributes
         Bit 0-1 - Sound Effect A Pitch  (0..3=Low..High)
         Bit 2-3 - Sound Effect A Volume (0..2=High..Low, 3=Mute on)
         Bit 4-5 - Sound Effect B Pitch  (0..3=Low..High)
         Bit 6-7 - Sound Effect B Volume (0..2=High..Low, 3=Not used)
4      Music Score Code (must be zero if not used)
5-F    Not used (zero)
```

See Sound Effect Tables below for a list of available pre-defined effects.
"Notes"
1) Mute is only active when both bits D2 and D3 are 1.
2) When the volume is set for either Sound Effect A or Sound Effect B, mute is turned off.
3) When Mute on/off has been executed, the sound fades out/fades in.
4) Mute on/off operates on the (BGM) which is reproduced by Sound Effect A, Sound

Effect B, and the Super NES APU. A "mute off" flag does not exist by itself. When mute flag is set, volume and pitch of Sound Effect A (port 1) and Sound Effect B (port 2) must be set.

SGB Command 09h - SOU_TRN
Used to transfer sound code or data to SNES Audio Processing Unit memory (APU-RAM).

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1-F    Not used (zero)
```

The sound code/data is sent by VRAM-Transfer (4 KBytes).

```
000       One (or two ???) 16bit expression(s ???) indicating the
          transfer destination address and transfer length.
...-...   Transfer Data
...-FFF   Remaining bytes not used
```

Possible destinations in APU-RAM are:

```
0400h-2AFFh  APU-RAM Program Area (9.75KBytes)
2B00h-4AFFh  APU-RAM Sound Score Area (8Kbytes)
4DB0h-EEFFh  APU-RAM Sampling Data Area (40.25 Kbytes)
```

This function may be used to take control of the SNES sound chip, and/or to access the SNES MIDI engine. In either case it requires deeper knowledge of SNES sound programming.

SGB Sound Effect A/B Tables
Below lists the digital sound effects that are pre-defined in the SGB/SNES BIOS, and which can be used with the SGB "SOUND" Command.
Effect A and B may be simultaneously reproduced.
The P-column indicates the recommended Pitch value, the V-column indicates the numbers of Voices used. Sound Effect A uses voices 6,7. Sound Effect B uses voices 0,1,4,5. Effects that use less voices will use only the upper voices (eg. 4,5 for Effect B with only two voices).

Sound Effect A Flag Table

Code	Description	P	V	Code	Description	P	V
00	Dummy flag, re-trigger	-	2	18	Fast Jump	3	1
80	Effect A, stop/silent	-	2	19	Jet (rocket) takeoff	0	1
01	Nintendo	3	1	1A	Jet (rocket) landing	0	1
02	Game Over	3	2	1B	Cup breaking	2	2
03	Drop	3	1	1C	Glass breaking	1	2
04	OK ... A	3	2	1D	Level UP	2	2
05	OK ... B	3	2	1E	Insert air	1	1
06	Select...A	3	2	1F	Sword swing	1	1
07	Select...B	3	1	20	Water falling	2	1
08	Select...C	2	2	21	Fire	1	1
09	Mistake...Buzzer	2	1	22	Wall collapsing	1	2
0A	Catch Item	2	2	23	Cancel	1	2
0B	Gate squeaks 1 time	2	2	24	Walking	1	2
0C	Explosion...small	1	2	25	Blocking strike	1	2
0D	Explosion...medium	1	2	26	Picture floats on & off	3	2
0E	Explosion...large	1	2	27	Fade in	0	2

```
0F  Attacked...A            3 1      28  Fade out                0 2
10  Attacked...B            3 2      29  Window being opened     1 2
11  Hit (punch)...A         0 2      2A  Window being closed     0 2
12  Hit (punch)...B         0 2      2B  Big Laser               3 2
13  Breath in air           3 2      2C  Stone gate closes/opens 0 2
14  Rocket Projectile...A   3 2      2D  Teleportation           3 1
15  Rocket Projectile...B   3 2      2E  Lightning               0 2
16  Escaping Bubble         2 1      2F  Earthquake              0 2
17  Jump                    3 1      30  Small Laser             2 2
```
Sound effect A is used for formanto sounds (percussion sounds).

Sound Effect B Flag Table

```
Code Description          P V       Code Description          P V
00   Dummy flag, re-trigger - 4     0D  Waterfall               2 2
80   Effect B, stop/silent  - 4     0E  Small character running 3 1
01   Applause...small group 2 1     0F  Horse running           3 1
02   Applause...medium group 2 2    10  Warning sound           1 1
03   Applause...large group 2 4     11  Approaching car         0 1
04   Wind                   1 2     12  Jet flying              1 1
05   Rain                   1 1     13  UFO flying              2 1
06   Storm                  1 3     14  Electromagnetic waves   0 1
07   Storm with wind/thunder 2 4    15  Score UP                3 1
08   Lightning              0 2     16  Fire                    2 1
09   Earthquake             0 2     17  Camera shutter, formanto 3 4
0A   Avalanche              0 2     18  Write, formanto         0 1
0B   Wave                   0 1     19  Show up title, formanto 0 1
0C   River                  3 2
```
Sound effect B is mainly used for looping sounds (sustained sounds).

SGB System Control Commands

SGB Command 17h - MASK_EN
Used to mask the gameboy window, among others this can be used to freeze the gameboy
screen before transferring data through VRAM (the SNES then keeps displaying the
gameboy screen, even though VRAM doesn't contain meaningful display information
during the transfer).
```
Byte  Content
0     Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1     Gameboy Screen Mask (0-3)
        0  Cancel Mask   (Display activated)
        1  Freeze Screen (Keep displaying current picture)
        2  Blank Screen  (Black)
        3  Blank Screen  (Color 0)
2-F   Not used (zero)
```
Freezing works only if the SNES has stored a picture, ie. if necessary wait one or two
frames before freezing (rather than freezing directly after having displayed the picture).
The Cancel Mask function may be also invoked (optionally) by completion of PAL_SET
and ATTR_SET commands.

SGB Command 0Ch - ATRC_EN

Used to enable/disable Attraction mode. It is totally unclear what an attraction mode is ???, but it is enabled by default.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length     (fixed length=1)
1      Attraction Disable   (0=Enable, 1=Disable)
2-F    Not used (zero)
```

SGB Command 0Dh - TEST_EN
Used to enable/disable test mode for "SGB-CPU variable clock speed function". This function is disabled by default.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length     (fixed length=1)
1      Test Mode Enable     (0=Disable, 1=Enable)
2-F    Not used (zero)
```

Maybe intended to determine whether SNES operates at 50Hz or 60Hz display refresh rate ??? Possibly result can be read-out from joypad register ???

SGB Command 0Eh - ICON_EN
Used to enable/disable ICON function. Possibly meant to enable/disable SGB/SNES popup menues which might otherwise activated during gameboy game play. By default all functions are enabled (0).

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length     (fixed length=1)
1      Disable Bits
         Bit 0 - Use of SGB-Built-in Color Palettes    (1=Disable)
         Bit 1 - Controller Set-up Screen    (0=Enable, 1=Disable)
         Bit 2 - SGB Register File Transfer (0=Receive, 1=Disable)
         Bit 3-6 - Not used (zero)
2-F    Not used (zero)
```

Above Bit 2 will suppress all further packets/commands when set, this might be useful when starting a monochrome game from inside of the SGB-menu of a multi-gamepak which contains a collection of different games.

SGB Command 0Fh - DATA_SND
Used to write one or more bytes directly into SNES Work RAM.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length     (fixed length=1)
1      SNES Destination Address, low
2      SNES Destination Address, high
3      SNES Destination Address, bank number
4      Number of bytes to write (01h-0Bh)
5      Data Byte #1
6      Data Byte #2 (if any)
7      Data Byte #3 (if any)
etc.
```

Unused bytes at the end of the packet should be set to zero, this function is restricted to a single packet, so that not more than 11 bytes can be defined at once.
Free Addresses in SNES memory are Bank 0 1800h-1FFFh, Bank 7Fh 0000h-FFFFh.

SGB Command 10h - DATA_TRN

Used to transfer binary code or data directly into SNES RAM.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length    (fixed length=1)
1      SNES Destination Address, low
2      SNES Destination Address, high
3      SNES Destination Address, bank number
4-F    Not used (zero)
```

The data is sent by VRAM-Transfer (4 KBytes).

```
000-FFF  Data
```

Free Addresses in SNES memory are Bank 0 1800h-1FFFh, Bank 7Fh 0000h-FFFFh. The transfer length is fixed at 4KBytes ???, so that directly writing to the free 2KBytes at 0:1800h would be a not so good idea ???

SGB Command 12h - JUMP

Used to set the SNES program counter to a specified address. Optionally, it may be used to set a new address for the SNES NMI handler, the NMI handler remains unchanged if all bytes 4-6 are zero.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length    (fixed length=1)
1      SNES Program Counter, low
2      SNES Program Counter, high
3      SNES Program Counter, bank number
4      SNES NMI Handler, low
5      SNES NMI Handler, high
6      SNES NMI Handler, bank number
7-F    Not used, zero
```

Note: The game "Space Invaders 94" uses this function when selecting "Arcade mode" to execute SNES program code which has been previously transferred from the SGB to the SNES. The type of the CPU which is used in the SNES is unknown ???

SGB Multiplayer Command

SGB Command 11h - MLT_REQ

Used to request multiplayer mode (ie. input from more than one joypad).
Because this function provides feedback from the SGB/SNES to the gameboy program, it is also used to detect SGB hardware.

```
Byte   Content
0      Command*8+Length    (fixed length=1)
1      Multiplayer Control (0-3) (Bit0=Enable, Bit1=Two/Four Players)
         0 = One player
         1 = Two players
         3 = Four players
2-F    Not used (zero)
```

In one player mode, the second joypad (if any) is used for the SGB system program. In two player mode, both joypads are used for the game. Because SNES have only two joypad sockets, four player mode requires an external "Multiplayer 5" adapter.

Reading Multiple Controllers (Joypads)
When having enabled multiple controllers by MLT_REQ, data for each joypad can be read out through JOYPAD register (FF00) as follows: First set P14 and P15 both HIGH (deselect both Buttons and Cursor keys), you can now read the lower 4bits of FF00 which indicate the joypad ID for the following joypad input:

```
0Fh  Joypad 1
0Eh  Joypad 2
0Dh  Joypad 3
0Ch  Joypad 4
```

Next, set P14 and P15 low (one after each other) to select Buttons and Cursor lines, and read-out joypad state as normally. When completed, set P14 and P15 back HIGH, this automatically increments the joypad number (or restarts counting once reached the lastmost joypad). Repeat the procedure until you have read-out states for all two (or four) joypads.

SGB Border and OBJ Commands

SGB Command 13h - CHR_TRN
Used to transfer tile data (characters) to SNES Tile memory in VRAM. This normally used to define BG tiles for the SGB Border (see PCT_TRN), but might be also used to define moveable SNES foreground sprites (see OBJ_TRN).

```
Byte  Content
0     Command*8+Length    (fixed length=1)
1     Tile Transfer Destination
        Bit 0  - Tile Numbers   (0=Tiles 00h-7Fh, 1=Tiles 80h-FFh)
        Bit 1  - Tile Type      (0=BG Tiles, 1=OBJ Tiles)
        Bit 2-7 - Not used (zero)
2-F   Not used (zero)
```

The tile data is sent by VRAM-Transfer (4 KBytes).

```
000-FFF  Bitmap data for 128 Tiles
```

Each tile occupies 16bytes (8x8 pixels, 16 colors each).
When intending to transfer more than 128 tiles, call this function twice (once for tiles 00h-7Fh, and once for tiles 80h-FFh). Note: The BG/OBJ Bit seems to have no effect and writes to the same VRAM addresses for both BG and OBJ ???

SGB Command 14h - PCT_TRN
Used to transfer tile map data and palette data to SNES BG Map memory in VRAM to be used for the SGB border. The actual tiles must be separately transferred by using the CHR_TRN function.

```
Byte  Content
0     Command*8+Length    (fixed length=1)
1-F   Not used (zero)
```

The map data is sent by VRAM-Transfer (4 KBytes).

```
000-7FF  BG Map 32x32 Entries of 16bit each (2048 bytes)
800-87F  BG Palette Data (Palettes 4-7, each 16 colors of 16bits
each)
880-FFF  Not used, don't care
```

Each BG Map Entry consists of a 16bit value as such:

```
Bit 0-9   - Character Number (use only 00h-FFh, upper 2 bits zero)
Bit 10-12 - Palette Number   (use only 4-7, officially use only 4-6)
Bit 13    - BG Priority       (use only 0)
Bit 14    - X-Flip            (0=Normal, 1=Mirror horizontally)
Bit 15    - Y-Flip            (0=Normal, 1=Mirror vertically)
```

Even though 32x32 map entries are transferred, only upper 32x28 are actually used (256x224 pixels, SNES screen size). The 20x18 entries in the center of the 32x28 area should be set to 0000h as transparent space for the gameboy window to be displayed inside. Reportedly, non-transparent border data will cover the gameboy window.

SGB Command 18h - OBJ_TRN
Used to transfer OBJ attributes to SNES OAM memory. Unlike all other functions with the ending _TRN, this function does not use the usual one-shot 4KBytes VRAM transfer method.
Instead, when enabled (below execute bit set), data is permanently (each frame) read out from the lower character line of the gameboy screen. To suppress garbage on the display, the lower line is masked, and only the upper 20x17 characters of the gameboy window are used - the masking method is unknwon - frozen, black, or recommended to be covered by the SGB border, or else ??? Also, when the function is enabled, "system attract mode is not performed" - whatever that means ???

```
Byte  Content
0     Command*8+Length (fixed length=1)
1     Control Bits
        Bit 0  - SNES OBJ Mode enable (0=Cancel, 1=Enable)
        Bit 1  - Change OBJ Color     (0=No, 1=Use definitions
below)
        Bit 2-7 - Not used (zero)
2-3   System Color Palette Number for OBJ Palette 4 (0-511)
4-5   System Color Palette Number for OBJ Palette 5 (0-511)
6-7   System Color Palette Number for OBJ Palette 6 (0-511)
8-9   System Color Palette Number for OBJ Palette 7 (0-511)
        These color entries are ignored if above Control Bit 1 is
zero.
        Because each OBJ palette consists of 16 colors, four system
        palette entries (of 4 colors each) are transferred into each
        OBJ palette. The system palette numbers are not required to
be
        aligned to a multiple of four, and will wrap to palette
number
        0 when exceeding 511. For example, a value of 511 would copy
        system palettes 511, 0, 1, 2 to the SNES OBJ palette.
A-F   Not used (zero)
```

The recommended method is to "display" gameboy BG tiles F9h..FFh from left to right as first 7 characters of the bottom-most character line of the gameboy screen. As for normal 4KByte VRAM transfers, this area should not be scrolled, should not be overlapped by gameboy OBJs, and the gameboy BGP palette register should be set up properly. By following that method, SNES OAM data can be defined in the 70h bytes of the gameboy BG tile memory at following addresses:

```
8F90-8FEF  SNES OAM, 24 Entries of 4 bytes each (96 bytes)
8FF0-8FF5  SNES OAM MSBs, 24 Entries of 2 bits each (6 bytes)
```

```
    8FF6-8FFF  Not used, don't care (10 bytes)
```

The format of SNES OAM Entries is:

```
  Byte 0  OBJ X-Position (0-511, MSB is separately stored, see below)
  Byte 1  OBJ Y-Position (0-255)
  Byte 2-3  Attributes (16bit)
    Bit 0-8    Tile Number      (use only 00h-FFh, upper bit zero)
    Bit 9-11   Palette Number   (use only 4-7)
    Bit 12-13  OBJ Priority     (use only 3)
    Bit 14     X-Flip           (0=Normal, 1=Mirror horizontally)
    Bit 15     Y-Flip           (0=Normal, 1=Mirror vertically)
```

The format of SNES OAM MSB Entries is:

```
  Actually, the format is unknown ??? However, 2 bits are used per
entry:
  One bit is the most significant bit of the OBJ X-Position.
  The other bit specifies the OBJ size (8x8 or 16x16 pixels).
```

CPU Registers and Flags

Registers

```
  16bit Hi   Lo   Name/Function
  AF    A    -    Accumulator & Flags
  BC    B    C    BC
  DE    D    E    DE
  HL    H    L    HL
  SP    -    -    Stack Pointer
  PC    -    -    Program Counter/Pointer
```

As shown above, most registers can be accessed either as one 16bit register, or as two separate 8bit registers.

The Flag Register (lower 8bit of AF register)

```
  Bit  Name  Set Clr  Expl.
  7    zf    Z   NZ   Zero Flag
  6    n     -   -    Add/Sub-Flag (BCD)
  5    h     -   -    Half Carry Flag (BCD)
  4    cy    C   NC   Carry Flag
  3-0  -     -   -    Not used (always zero)
```

Conatins the result from the recent instruction which has affected flags.

The Zero Flag (Z)

This bit becomes set (1) if the result of an operation has been zero (0). Used for conditional jumps.

The Carry Flag (C, or Cy)

Becomes set when the result of an addition became bigger than FFh (8bit) or FFFFh (16bit). Or when the result of a subtraction or comparision became less than zero (much as for Z80 and 80x86 CPUs, but unlike as for 65XX and ARM CPUs). Also the flag becomes set when a rotate/shift operation has shifted-out a "1"-bit.
Used for conditional jumps, and for instructions such like ADC, SBC, RL, RLA, etc.

The BCD Flags (N, H)
These flags are (rarely) used for the DAA instruction only, N Indicates whether the
previous instruction has been an addition or subtraction, and H indicates carry for lower
4bits of the result, also for DAA, the C flag must indicate carry for upper 8bits.
After adding/subtracting two BCD numbers, DAA is intended to convert the result into
BCD format; BCD numbers are ranged from 00h to 99h rather than 00h to FFh.
Because C and H flags must contain carry-outs for each digit, DAA cannot be used for
16bit operations (which have 4 digits), or for INC/DEC operations (which do not affect
C-flag).

CPU Instruction Set

Tables below specify the mnemonic, opcode bytes, clock cycles, affected flags (ordered
as znhc), and explanatation.
The timings assume a CPU clock frequency of 4.194304 MHz (or 8.4
MHz for CGB in double speed mode), as all gameboy timings are divideable
by 4, many people specify timings and clock frequency divided by 4.

GMB 8bit-Loadcommands

```
  ld   r,r         xx          4 ---- r=r
  ld   r,n         xx nn       8 ---- r=n
  ld   r,(HL)      xx          8 ---- r=(HL)
  ld   (HL),r      7x          8 ---- (HL)=r
  ld   (HL),n      36 nn      12 ----
  ld   A,(BC)      0A          8 ----
  ld   A,(DE)      1A          8 ----
  ld   A,(nn)      FA         16 ----
  ld   (BC),A      02          8 ----
  ld   (DE),A      12          8 ----
  ld   (nn),A      EA         16 ----
  ld   A,(FF00+n)  F0 nn      12 ---- read from io-port n (memory
FF00+n)
  ld   (FF00+n),A  E0 nn      12 ---- write to io-port n (memory FF00+n)
  ld   A,(FF00+C)  F2          8 ---- read from io-port C (memory
FF00+C)
  ld   (FF00+C),A  E2          8 ---- write to io-port C (memory FF00+C)
  ldi  (HL),A      22          8 ---- (HL)=A, HL=HL+1
  ldi  A,(HL)      2A          8 ---- A=(HL), HL=HL+1
  ldd  (HL),A      32          8 ---- (HL)=A, HL=HL-1
  ldd  A,(HL)      3A          8 ---- A=(HL), HL=HL-1
```

GMB 16bit-Loadcommands

```
  ld   rr,nn       x1 nn nn  12 ---- rr=nn (rr may be BC,DE,HL or SP)
  ld   SP,HL       F9          8 ---- SP=HL
  push rr          x5         16 ---- SP=SP-2  (SP)=rr   (rr may be
BC,DE,HL,AF)
  pop  rr          x1         12 (AF) rr=(SP)  SP=SP+2   (rr may be
BC,DE,HL,AF)
```

GMB 8bit-Arithmetic/logical Commands

```
  add  A,r          8x           4 z0hc A=A+r
  add  A,n          C6 nn        8 z0hc A=A+n
  add  A,(HL)       86           8 z0hc A=A+(HL)
  adc  A,r          8x           4 z0hc A=A+r+cy
  adc  A,n          CE nn        8 z0hc A=A+n+cy
  adc  A,(HL)       8E           8 z0hc A=A+(HL)+cy
  sub  r            9x           4 z1hc A=A-r
  sub  n            D6 nn        8 z1hc A=A-n
  sub  (HL)         96           8 z1hc A=A-(HL)
  sbc  A,r          9x           4 z1hc A=A-r-cy
  sbc  A,n          DE nn        8 z1hc A=A-n-cy
  sbc  A,(HL)       9E           8 z1hc A=A-(HL)-cy
  and  r            Ax           4 z010 A=A & r
  and  n            E6 nn        8 z010 A=A & n
  and  (HL)         A6           8 z010 A=A & (HL)
  xor  r            Ax           4 z000
  xor  n            EE nn        8 z000
  xor  (HL)         AE           8 z000
  or   r            Bx           4 z000 A=A | r
  or   n            F6 nn        8 z000 A=A | n
  or   (HL)         B6           8 z000 A=A | (HL)
  cp   r            Bx           4 z1hc compare A-r
  cp   n            FE nn        8 z1hc compare A-n
  cp   (HL)         BE           8 z1hc compare A-(HL)
  inc  r            xx           4 z0h- r=r+1
  inc  (HL)         34          12 z0h- (HL)=(HL)+1
  dec  r            xx           4 z1h- r=r-1
  dec  (HL)         35          12 z1h- (HL)=(HL)-1
  daa               27           4 z-0x decimal adjust akku
  cpl               2F           4 -11- A = A xor FF
```

GMB 16bit-Arithmetic/logical Commands

```
  add  HL,rr        x9           8 -0hc HL = HL+rr     ;rr may be
BC,DE,HL,SP
  inc  rr           x3           8 ---- rr = rr+1      ;rr may be
BC,DE,HL,SP
  dec  rr           xB           8 ---- rr = rr-1      ;rr may be
BC,DE,HL,SP
  add  SP,dd        E8          16 00hc SP = SP +/- dd ;dd is 8bit signed
number
  ld   HL,SP+dd     F8          12 00hc HL = SP +/- dd ;dd is 8bit signed
number
```

GMB Rotate- und Shift-Commands

```
  rlca              07           4 000c rotate akku left
  rla               17           4 000c rotate akku left through carry
  rrca              0F           4 000c rotate akku right
  rra               1F           4 000c rotate akku right through carry
  rlc  r            CB 0x        8 z00c rotate left
  rlc  (HL)         CB 06       16 z00c rotate left
  rl   r            CB 1x        8 z00c rotate left through carry
  rl   (HL)         CB 16       16 z00c rotate left through carry
```

```
  rrc   r         CB 0x         8 z00c rotate right
  rrc  (HL)        CB 0E        16 z00c rotate right
  rr    r          CB 1x         8 z00c rotate right through carry
  rr   (HL)        CB 1E        16 z00c rotate right through carry
  sla   r          CB 2x         8 z00c shift left arithmetic (b0=0)
  sla  (HL)        CB 26        16 z00c shift left arithmetic (b0=0)
  swap r           CB 3x         8 z000 exchange low/hi-nibble
  swap (HL)        CB 36        16 z000 exchange low/hi-nibble
  sra   r          CB 2x         8 z00c shift right arithmetic (b7=b7)
  sra  (HL)        CB 2E        16 z00c shift right arithmetic (b7=b7)
  srl   r          CB 3x         8 z00c shift right logical (b7=0)
  srl  (HL)        CB 3E        16 z00c shift right logical (b7=0)
```

GMB Singlebit Operation Commands

```
  bit  n,r         CB xx         8 z01- test bit n
  bit  n,(HL)      CB xx        12 z01- test bit n
  set  n,r         CB xx         8 ---- set bit n
  set  n,(HL)      CB xx        16 ---- set bit n
  res  n,r         CB xx         8 ---- reset bit n
  res  n,(HL)      CB xx        16 ---- reset bit n
```

GMB CPU-Controlcommands

```
  ccf              3F            4 -00c cy=cy xor 1
  scf              37            4 -001 cy=1
  nop              00            4 ---- no operation
  halt             76          N*4 ---- halt until interrupt occurs (low
power)
  stop             10 00         ? ---- low power standby mode (VERY low
power)
  di               F3            4 ---- disable interrupts, IME=0
  ei               FB            4 ---- enable interrupts, IME=1
```

GMB Jumpcommands

```
  jp    nn         C3 nn nn    16 ---- jump to nn, PC=nn
  jp    HL         E9           4 ---- jump to HL, PC=HL
  jp    f,nn       xx nn nn 16;12 ---- conditional jump if nz,z,nc,c
  jr    PC+dd      18 dd       12 ---- relative jump to nn (PC=PC+/-7bit)
  jr    f,PC+dd    xx dd     12;8 ---- conditional relative jump if
nz,z,nc,c
  call nn          CD nn nn    24 ---- call to nn, SP=SP-2, (SP)=PC,
PC=nn
  call f,nn        xx nn nn 24;12 ---- conditional call if nz,z,nc,c
  ret              C9          16 ---- return, PC=(SP), SP=SP+2
  ret   f          xx        20;8 ---- conditional return if nz,z,nc,c
  reti             D9          16 ---- return and enable interrupts
(IME=1)
  rst  n           xx          16 ---- call to 00,08,10,18,20,28,30,38
```

CPU Comparision with Z80

Comparision with 8080

Basically, the gameboy CPU works more like an older 8080 CPU rather than like a more powerful Z80 CPU. It is, however, supporting CB-prefixed instructions. Also, all known gameboy assemblers using the more obvious Z80-style syntax, rather than the chaotic 8080-style syntax.

Comparision with Z80
Any DD-, ED-, and FD-prefixed instructions are missing, that means no IX-, IY-registers, no block commands, and some other missing commands.
All exchange instructions have been removed (including total absence of second register set), 16bit memory accesses are mostly missing, and 16bit arithmetic functions are heavily cut-down.
The gameboy has no IN/OUT instructions, instead I/O ports are accessed directly by normal LD instructions, or by special LD (FF00+n) opcodes.
The sign and parity/overflow flags have been removed.
The gameboy operates approximately as fast as a 4MHz Z80 (8MHz in CGB double speed mode), execution time of all instructions has been rounded up to a multiple of 4 cycles though.

Moved, Removed, and Added Opcodes

```
Opcode   Z80               GMB
----------------------------------------
08       EX   AF,AF        LD   (nn),SP
10       DJNZ PC+dd        STOP
22       LD   (nn),HL      LDI  (HL),A
2A       LD   HL,(nn)      LDI  A,(HL)
32       LD   (nn),A       LDD  (HL),A
3A       LD   A,(nn)       LDD  A,(HL)
D3       OUT  (n),A        -
D9       EXX               RETI
DB       IN   A,(n)        -
DD       <IX>              -
E0       RET  PO           LD   (FF00+n),A
E2       JP   PO,nn        LD   (FF00+C),A
E3       EX   (SP),HL      -
E4       CALL P0,nn        -
E8       RET  PE           ADD  SP,dd
EA       JP   PE,nn        LD   (nn),A
EB       EX   DE,HL        -
EC       CALL PE,nn        -
ED       <pref>            -
F0       RET  P            LD   A,(FF00+n)
F2       JP   P,nn         LD   A,(FF00+C)
F4       CALL P,nn         -
F8       RET  M            LD   HL,SP+dd
FA       JP   M,nn         LD   A,(nn)
FC       CALL M,nn         -
FD       <IY>              -
CB3X     SLL  r/(HL)       SWAP r/(HL)
```
Note: The unused (-) opcodes will lock-up the gameboy CPU when used.

The Cartridge Header

An internal information area is located at 0100-014F in
each cartridge. It contains the following values:

0100-0103 - Entry Point
After displaying the Nintendo Logo, the built-in boot procedure jumps to this address
(100h), which should then jump to the actual main program in the cartridge. Usually this
4 byte area contains a NOP instruction, followed by a JP 0150h instruction. But not
always.

0104-0133 - Nintendo Logo
These bytes define the bitmap of the Nintendo logo that is displayed when the gameboy
gets turned on. The hexdump of this bitmap is:

```
CE ED 66 66 CC 0D 00 0B 03 73 00 83 00 0C 00 0D
00 08 11 1F 88 89 00 0E DC CC 6E E6 DD DD D9 99
BB BB 67 63 6E 0E EC CC DD DC 99 9F BB B9 33 3E
```

The gameboys boot procedure verifies the content of this bitmap (after it has displayed
it), and LOCKS ITSELF UP if these bytes are incorrect. A CGB verifies only the first
18h bytes of the bitmap, but others (for example a pocket gameboy) verify all 30h bytes.

0134-0143 - Title
Title of the game in UPPER CASE ASCII. If it is less than 16 characters then the
remaining bytes are filled with 00's. When inventing the CGB, Nintendo has reduced the
length of this area to 15 characters, and some months later they had the fantastic idea to
reduce it to 11 characters only. The new meaning of the ex-title bytes is described below.

013F-0142 - Manufacturer Code
In older cartridges this area has been part of the Title (see above), in newer cartridges this
area contains an 4 character uppercase manufacturer code. Purpose and Deeper Meaning
unknown.

0143 - CGB Flag
In older cartridges this byte has been part of the Title (see above). In CGB cartridges the
upper bit is used to enable CGB functions. This is required, otherwise the CGB switches
itself into Non-CGB-Mode. Typical values are:

```
80h - Game supports CGB functions, but works on old gameboys also.
C0h - Game works on CGB only (physically the same as 80h).
```

Values with Bit 7 set, and either Bit 2 or 3 set, will switch the gameboy into a special
non-CGB-mode with uninitialized palettes. Purpose unknown, eventually this has been
supposed to be used to colorize monochrome games that include fixed palette data at a
special location in ROM.

0144-0145 - New Licensee Code
Specifies a two character ASCII licensee code, indicating the company or publisher of the
game. These two bytes are used in newer games only (games that have been released

after the SGB has been invented). Older games are using the header entry at 014B instead.

0146 - SGB Flag
Specifies whether the game supports SGB functions, common values are:

```
00h = No SGB functions (Normal Gameboy or CGB only game)
03h = Game supports SGB functions
```

The SGB disables its SGB functions if this byte is set to another value than 03h.

0147 - Cartridge Type
Specifies which Memory Bank Controller (if any) is used in the cartridge, and if further external hardware exists in the cartridge.

```
00h  ROM ONLY                    13h  MBC3+RAM+BATTERY
01h  MBC1                        15h  MBC4
02h  MBC1+RAM                    16h  MBC4+RAM
03h  MBC1+RAM+BATTERY            17h  MBC4+RAM+BATTERY
05h  MBC2                        19h  MBC5
06h  MBC2+BATTERY                1Ah  MBC5+RAM
08h  ROM+RAM                     1Bh  MBC5+RAM+BATTERY
09h  ROM+RAM+BATTERY             1Ch  MBC5+RUMBLE
0Bh  MMM01                       1Dh  MBC5+RUMBLE+RAM
0Ch  MMM01+RAM                   1Eh  MBC5+RUMBLE+RAM+BATTERY
0Dh  MMM01+RAM+BATTERY           FCh  POCKET CAMERA
0Fh  MBC3+TIMER+BATTERY          FDh  BANDAI TAMA5
10h  MBC3+TIMER+RAM+BATTERY      FEh  HuC3
11h  MBC3                        FFh  HuC1+RAM+BATTERY
12h  MBC3+RAM
```

0148 - ROM Size
Specifies the ROM Size of the cartridge. Typically calculated as "32KB shl N".

```
00h -  32KByte (no ROM banking)
01h -  64KByte (4 banks)
02h - 128KByte (8 banks)
03h - 256KByte (16 banks)
04h - 512KByte (32 banks)
05h -   1MByte (64 banks)  - only 63 banks used by MBC1
06h -   2MByte (128 banks) - only 125 banks used by MBC1
07h -   4MByte (256 banks)
52h - 1.1MByte (72 banks)
53h - 1.2MByte (80 banks)
54h - 1.5MByte (96 banks)
```

0149 - RAM Size
Specifies the size of the external RAM in the cartridge (if any).

```
00h - None
01h - 2 KBytes
02h - 8 Kbytes
03h - 32 KBytes (4 banks of 8KBytes each)
```

When using a MBC2 chip 00h must be specified in this entry, even though the MBC2 includes a built-in RAM of 512 x 4 bits.

014A - Destination Code
Specifies if this version of the game is supposed to be sold in japan, or anywhere else. Only two values are defined.

```
00h - Japanese
01h - Non-Japanese
```

014B - Old Licensee Code
Specifies the games company/publisher code in range 00-FFh. A value of 33h signalizes that the New License Code in header bytes 0144-0145 is used instead.
(Super GameBoy functions won't work if <> $33.)

014C - Mask ROM Version number
Specifies the version number of the game. That is usually 00h.

014D - Header Checksum
Contains an 8 bit checksum across the cartridge header bytes 0134-014C. The checksum is calculated as follows:

```
x=0:FOR i=0134h TO 014Ch:x=x-MEM[i]-1:NEXT
```

The lower 8 bits of the result must be the same than the value in this entry. The GAME WON'T WORK if this checksum is incorrect.

014E-014F - Global Checksum
Contains a 16 bit checksum (upper byte first) across the whole cartridge ROM. Produced by adding all bytes of the cartridge (except for the two checksum bytes). The Gameboy doesn't verify this checksum.

Memory Bank Controllers

As the gameboys 16 bit address bus offers only limited space for ROM and RAM addressing, many games are using Memory Bank Controllers (MBCs) to expand the available address space by bank switching. These MBC chips are located in the game cartridge (ie. not in the gameboy itself), several different MBC types are available:

None (32KByte ROM only)
MBC1 (max 2MByte ROM and/or 32KByte RAM)
MBC2 (max 256KByte ROM and 512x4 bits RAM)
MBC3 (max 2MByte ROM and/or 32KByte RAM and Timer)
HuC1 (MBC with Infrared Controller)

MBC Timing Issues

In each cartridge, the required (or preferred) MBC type should be specified in byte at 0147h of the ROM. (As described in the chapter about The Cartridge Header.)

None (32KByte ROM only)

Small games of not more than 32KBytes ROM do not require a MBC chip for ROM banking. The ROM is directly mapped to memory at 0000-7FFFh. Optionally up to 8KByte of RAM could be connected at A000-BFFF, even though that could require a tiny MBC-like circuit, but no real MBC chip.

MBC1 (max 2MByte ROM and/or 32KByte RAM)

This is the first MBC chip for the gameboy. Any newer MBC chips are working similiar, so that is relative easy to upgrade a program from one MBC chip to another - or even to make it compatible to several different types of MBCs.

Note that the memory in range 0000-7FFF is used for both reading from ROM, and for writing to the MBCs Control Registers.

0000-3FFF - ROM Bank 00 (Read Only)
This area always contains the first 16KBytes of the cartridge ROM.

4000-7FFF - ROM Bank 01-7F (Read Only)
This area may contain any of the further 16KByte banks of the ROM, allowing to address up to 125 ROM Banks (almost 2MByte). As described below, bank numbers 20h, 40h, and 60h cannot be used, resulting in the odd amount of 125 banks.

A000-BFFF - RAM Bank 00-03, if any (Read/Write)
This area is used to address external RAM in the cartridge (if any). External RAM is often battery buffered, allowing to store game positions or high score tables, even if the gameboy is turned off, or if the cartridge is removed from the gameboy. Available RAM sizes are: 2KByte (at A000-A7FF), 8KByte (at A000-BFFF), and 32KByte (in form of four 8K banks at A000-BFFF).

0000-1FFF - RAM Enable (Write Only)
Before external RAM can be read or written, it must be enabled by writing to this address space. It is recommended to disable external RAM after accessing it, in order to protect its contents from damage during power down of the gameboy. Usually the following values are used:

```
  00h  Disable RAM (default)
  0Ah  Enable RAM
```

Practically any value with 0Ah in the lower 4 bits enables RAM, and any other value disables RAM.

2000-3FFF - ROM Bank Number (Write Only)
Writing to this address space selects the lower 5 bits of the ROM Bank Number (in range 01-1Fh). When 00h is written, the MBC translates that to bank 01h also. That doesn't

harm so far, because ROM Bank 00h can be always directly accessed by reading from 0000-3FFF.

But (when using the register below to specify the upper ROM Bank bits), the same happens for Bank 20h, 40h, and 60h. Any attempt to address these ROM Banks will select Bank 21h, 41h, and 61h instead.

4000-5FFF - RAM Bank Number - or - Upper Bits of ROM Bank Number (Write Only) This 2bit register can be used to select a RAM Bank in range from 00-03h, or to specify the upper two bits (Bit 5-6) of the ROM Bank number, depending on the current ROM/RAM Mode. (See below.)

6000-7FFF - ROM/RAM Mode Select (Write Only)
This 1bit Register selects whether the two bits of the above register should be used as upper two bits of the ROM Bank, or as RAM Bank Number.

```
  00h = ROM Banking Mode (up to 8KByte RAM, 2MByte ROM) (default)
  01h = RAM Banking Mode (up to 32KByte RAM, 512KByte ROM)
```

The program may freely switch between both modes, the only limitiation is that only RAM Bank 00h can be used during Mode 0, and only ROM Banks 00-1Fh can be used during Mode 1.

MBC2 (max 256KByte ROM and 512x4 bits RAM)

0000-3FFF - ROM Bank 00 (Read Only)
Same as for MBC1.

4000-7FFF - ROM Bank 01-0F (Read Only)
Same as for MBC1, but only a total of 16 ROM banks is supported.

A000-A1FF - 512x4bits RAM, built-in into the MBC2 chip (Read/Write)
The MBC2 doesn't support external RAM, instead it includes 512x4 bits of built-in RAM (in the MBC2 chip itself). It still requires an external battery to save data during power-off though.
As the data consists of 4bit values, only the lower 4 bits of the "bytes" in this memory area are used.

0000-1FFF - RAM Enable (Write Only)
The least significant bit of the upper address byte must be zero to enable/disable cart RAM. For example the following addresses can be used to enable/disable cart RAM: 0000-00FF, 0200-02FF, 0400-04FF, ..., 1E00-1EFF.
The suggested address range to use for MBC2 ram enable/disable is 0000-00FF.

2000-3FFF - ROM Bank Number (Write Only)
Writing a value (XXXXBBBB - X = Don't cares, B = bank select bits) into 2000-3FFF area will select an appropriate ROM bank at 4000-7FFF.

The least significant bit of the upper address byte must be one to select a ROM bank. For example the following addresses can be used to select a ROM bank: 2100-21FF, 2300-23FF, 2500-25FF, ..., 3F00-3FFF.
The suggested address range to use for MBC2 rom bank selection is 2100-21FF.

MBC3 (max 2MByte ROM and/or 32KByte RAM and Timer)

Beside for the ability to access up to 2MB ROM (128 banks), and 32KB RAM (4 banks), the MBC3 also includes a built-in Real Time Clock (RTC). The RTC requires an external 32.768 kHz Quartz Oscillator, and an external battery (if it should continue to tick when the gameboy is turned off).

0000-3FFF - ROM Bank 00 (Read Only)
Same as for MBC1.

4000-7FFF - ROM Bank 01-7F (Read Only)
Same as for MBC1, except that accessing banks 20h, 40h, and 60h is supported now.

A000-BFFF - RAM Bank 00-03, if any (Read/Write)
A000-BFFF - RTC Register 08-0C (Read/Write)
Depending on the current Bank Number/RTC Register selection (see below), this memory space is used to access an 8KByte external RAM Bank, or a single RTC Register.

0000-1FFF - RAM and Timer Enable (Write Only)
Mostly the same as for MBC1, a value of 0Ah will enable reading and writing to external RAM - and to the RTC Registers! A value of 00h will disable either.

2000-3FFF - ROM Bank Number (Write Only)
Same as for MBC1, except that the whole 7 bits of the RAM Bank Number are written directly to this address. As for the MBC1, writing a value of 00h, will select Bank 01h instead. All other values 01-7Fh select the corresponding ROM Banks.

4000-5FFF - RAM Bank Number - or - RTC Register Select (Write Only)
As for the MBC1s RAM Banking Mode, writing a value in range for 00h-03h maps the corresponding external RAM Bank (if any) into memory at A000-BFFF.
When writing a value of 08h-0Ch, this will map the corresponding RTC register into memory at A000-BFFF. That register could then be read/written by accessing any address in that area, typically that is done by using address A000.

6000-7FFF - Latch Clock Data (Write Only)
When writing 00h, and then 01h to this register, the current time becomes latched into the RTC registers. The latched data will not change until it becomes latched again, by

repeating the write 00h->01h procedure.
This is supposed for <reading> from the RTC registers. It is proof to read the latched (frozen) time from the RTC registers, while the clock itself continues to tick in background.

The Clock Counter Registers

```
08h  RTC S   Seconds   0-59 (0-3Bh)
09h  RTC M   Minutes   0-59 (0-3Bh)
0Ah  RTC H   Hours     0-23 (0-17h)
0Bh  RTC DL  Lower 8 bits of Day Counter (0-FFh)
0Ch  RTC DH  Upper 1 bit of Day Counter, Carry Bit, Halt Flag
        Bit 0  Most significant bit of Day Counter (Bit 8)
        Bit 6  Halt (0=Active, 1=Stop Timer)
        Bit 7  Day Counter Carry Bit (1=Counter Overflow)
```

The Halt Flag is supposed to be set before <writing> to the RTC Registers.

The Day Counter
The total 9 bits of the Day Counter allow to count days in range from 0-511 (0-1FFh). The Day Counter Carry Bit becomes set when this value overflows. In that case the Carry Bit remains set until the program does reset it.
Note that you can store an offset to the Day Counter in battery RAM. For example, every time you read a non-zero Day Counter, add this Counter to the offset in RAM, and reset the Counter to zero. This method allows to count any number of days, making your program Year-10000-Proof, provided that the cartridge gets used at least every 511 days.

Delays
When accessing the RTC Registers it is recommended to execute a 4ms delay (4 Cycles in Normal Speed Mode) between the separate accesses.

HuC1 (MBC with Infrared Controller)

This controller (made by Hudson Soft) appears to be very similar to an MBC1 with the main difference being that it supports infrared LED input / output. (Similiar to the infrared port that has been later invented in CGBs.)

The Japanese cart "Fighting Phoenix" (internal cart name: SUPER B DAMAN) is known to contain this chip.

MBC Timing Issues

Using MBCs with CGB Double Speed Mode
The MBC5 has been designed to support CGB Double Speed Mode.
There have been rumours that older MBCs (like MBC1-3) wouldn't be fast enough in that mode. If so, it might be nethertheless possible to use Double Speed during periods which

use only code and data which is located in internal RAM.
However, despite of the above, my own good old selfmade MBC1-EPROM card appears to work stable and fine even in Double Speed Mode though.

Gamegenie/Shark Cheats

Game Shark and Gamegenie are external cartridge adapters that can be plugged between the gameboy and the actual game cartridge. Hexadecimal codes can be then entered for specific games, typically providing things like Infinite Sex, 255 Cigarettes, or Starting directly in Wonderland Level PRO, etc.

Gamegenie (ROM patches)
Gamegenie codes consist of nine-digit hex numbers, formatted as ABC-DEF-GHI, the meaning of the separate digits is:

```
AB     New data
FCDE   Memory address, XORed by 0F000h
GI     Old data, XORed by 0BAh and rotated left by two
H      Don't know, maybe checksum and/or else
```

The address should be located in ROM area 0000h-7FFFh, the adapter permanently compares address/old data with address/data being read by the game, and replaces that data by new data if necessary. That method (more or less) prohibits unwanted patching of wrong memory banks. Eventually it is also possible to patch external RAM ?
Newer devices reportedly allow to specify only the first six digits (optionally). As far as I rememeber, around three or four codes can be used simultaneously.

Game Shark (RAM patches)
Game Shark codes consist of eight-digit hex numbers, formatted as ABCDEFGH, the meaning of the separate digits is:

```
AB     External RAM bank number
CD     New Data
GHEF   Memory Address (internal or external RAM, A000-DFFF)
```

As far as I understand, patching is implement by hooking the original VBlank interrupt handler, and re-writing RAM values each frame. The downside is that this method steals some CPU time, also, it cannot be used to patch program code in ROM.
As far as I rememeber, somewhat 10-25 codes can be used simultaneously.

Power Up Sequence

When the GameBoy is powered up, a 256 byte program starting at memory location 0 is executed. This program is located in a ROM inside the GameBoy. The first thing the program does is read the cartridge locations from $104 to $133 and place this graphic of a Nintendo logo on the screen at the top. This image is then scrolled until it is in the middle of the screen. Two musical notes are then played on the internal speaker. Again, the cartridge locations $104 to $133 are read but this time they are compared with a table in

the internal rom. If any byte fails to compare, then the GameBoy stops comparing bytes and simply halts all operations. If all locations compare the same, then the GameBoy starts adding all of the bytes in the cartridge from $134 to $14d. A value of 25 decimal is added to this total. If the least significant byte of the result is a not a zero, then the GameBoy will stop doing anything. If it is a zero, then the internal ROM is disabled and cartridge program execution begins at location $100 with the following register values:

```
AF=$01B0
BC=$0013
DE=$00D8
HL=$014D
Stack Pointer=$FFFE
[$FF05] = $00    ; TIMA
[$FF06] = $00    ; TMA
[$FF07] = $00    ; TAC
[$FF10] = $80    ; NR10
[$FF11] = $BF    ; NR11
[$FF12] = $F3    ; NR12
[$FF14] = $BF    ; NR14
[$FF16] = $3F    ; NR21
[$FF17] = $00    ; NR22
[$FF19] = $BF    ; NR24
[$FF1A] = $7F    ; NR30
[$FF1B] = $FF    ; NR31
[$FF1C] = $9F    ; NR32
[$FF1E] = $BF    ; NR33
[$FF20] = $FF    ; NR41
[$FF21] = $00    ; NR42
[$FF22] = $00    ; NR43
[$FF23] = $BF    ; NR30
[$FF24] = $77    ; NR50
[$FF25] = $F3    ; NR51
[$FF26] = $F1-GB, $F0-SGB ; NR52
[$FF40] = $91    ; LCDC
[$FF42] = $00    ; SCY
[$FF43] = $00    ; SCX
[$FF45] = $00    ; LYC
[$FF47] = $FC    ; BGP
[$FF48] = $FF    ; OBP0
[$FF49] = $FF    ; OBP1
[$FF4A] = $00    ; WY
[$FF4B] = $00    ; WX
[$FFFF] = $00    ; IE
```

It is not a good idea to assume the above values will always exist. A later version GameBoy could contain different values than these at reset. Always set these registers on reset rather than assume they are as above.

Please note that GameBoy internal RAM on power up contains random data. All of the GameBoy emulators tend to set all RAM to value $00 on entry.

Cart RAM the first time it is accessed on a real GameBoy contains random data. It will

only contain known data if the GameBoy code initializes it to some value.

Reducing Power Consumption

The following can be used to recude the power consumption of the gameboy, and to extend the life of the batteries.

[PWR Using the HALT Instruction](#)
[PWR Using the STOP Instruction](#)
[PWR Disabeling the Sound Controller](#)
[PWR Not using CGB Double Speed Mode](#)
[PWR Using the Skills](#)

PWR Using the HALT Instruction

It is recommended that the HALT instruction be used whenever possible to reduce power consumption & extend the life of the batteries. This command stops the system clock reducing the power consumption of both the CPU and ROM.

The CPU will remain suspended until an interrupt occurs at which point the interrupt is serviced and then the instruction immediately following the HALT is executed.

Depending on how much CPU time is required by a game, the HALT instruction can extend battery life anywhere from 5 to 50% or possibly more.

When waiting for a vblank event, this would be a BAD example:

```
  @@wait:
   ld   a,(0FF44h)      ;LY
   cp   a,144
   jr   nz,@@wait
```

A better example would be a procedure as shown below. In this case the vblank interrupt must be enabled, and your vblank interrupt procedure must set vblank_flag to a non-zero value.

```
   ld   hl,vblank_flag  ;hl=pointer to vblank_flag
   xor  a               ;a=0
  @@wait:               ;wait...
   halt                 ;suspend CPU - wait for ANY interrupt
   cp   a,(hl)          ;vblank flag still zero?
   jr   z,@@wait        ;wait more if zero
   ld   (hl),a          ;set vblank_flag back to zero
```

The vblank_flag is used to determine whether the HALT period has been terminated by a vblank interrupt, or by another interrupt. In case that your program has all other interrupts disabled, then it would be proof to replace the above procedure by a single HALT

instruction.

PWR Using the STOP Instruction

The STOP instruction is intended to switch the gameboy into VERY low power standby mode. For example, a program may use this feature when it hasn't sensed keyboard input for a longer period (assuming that somebody forgot to turn off the gameboy).

Before invoking STOP, it might be required to disable Sound and Video manually (as well as IR-link port in CGB). Much like HALT, the STOP state is terminated by interrupt events - in this case this would be commonly a joypad interrupt. The joypad register might be required to be prepared for STOP either.

PWR Disabeling the Sound Controller

If your programs doesn't use sound at all (or during some periods) then write 00h to register FF26 to save 16% or more on GB power consumption.
Sound can be turned back on by writing 80h to the same register, all sound registers must be then re-initialized.
When the gameboy becomes turned on, sound is enabled by default, and must be turned off manually when not used.

PWR Not using CGB Double Speed Mode

Because CGB Double Speed mode consumes more power, it'd be recommended to use normal speed when possible.
There's limited ability to switch between both speeds, for example, a game might use normal speed in the title screen, and double speed in the game, or vice versa.
However, during speed switch the display collapses for a short moment, so that it'd be no good idea to alter speeds within active game or title screen periods.

PWR Using the Skills

Most of the above power saving methods will produce best results when using efficient and tight assembler code which requires as less CPU power as possible. Thus, experienced old-school programmers will (hopefully) produce lower power consumption, as than HLL-programming teenagers, for example.

Sprite RAM Bug

There is a flaw in the GameBoy hardware that causes trash to be written to OAM RAM if

the following commands are used while their 16-bit content is in the range of $FE00 to $FEFF:

```
inc rr          dec rr             ;rr = bc,de, or hl
ldi a,(hl)    ldd a,(hl)
ldi (hl),a    ldd (hl),a
```

Only sprites 1 & 2 ($FE00 & $FE04) are not affected by these instructions.

External Connectors

Cartridge Slot
```
Pin    Name    Expl.
1      VDD     Power Supply +5V DC
2      PHI     System Clock
3      /WR     Write
4      /RD     Read
5      /CS     Chip Select
6-21  A0-A15  Address Lines
22-29 D0-D7   Data Lines
30     /RES    Reset signal
31     VIN     External Sound Input
32     GND     Ground
```

Link Port
Pin numbers are arranged as 2,4,6 in upper row, 1,3,5 un lower row; outside view of gameboy socket; flat side of socket upside.
Colors as used in most or all standard link cables, because SIN and SOUT are crossed, colors Red and Orange are exchanged at one cable end.
```
Pin Name Color  Expl.
1   VCC  -       +5V DC
2   SOUT red     Data Out
3   SIN  orange Data In
4   P14  -       Not used
5   SCK  green  Shift Clock
6   GND  blue   Ground
```
Note: The original gameboy used larger plugs (unlike pocket gameboys and newer), linking between older/newer gameboys is possible by using cables with one large and one small plug though.

Stereo Sound Connector (3.5mm, female)
```
Pin       Expl.
Tip       Sound Left
Middle   Sound Right
Base      Ground
```

External Power Supply
...

END

The information contained in this document is extracted from an old PanDoc file called GBspec.txt or something similar. I removed the things I thought were already covered in the other file (the Pan docs file, as can be found in the navigation frame) so there might be elements that you already read somewhere.
Still, I have the impression that this file does cover some ground not present in the other file.

Echo of 8kB Internal RAM

The addresses E000-FE00 appear to access the internal RAM the same as C000-DE00. (i.e. If you write a byte to address E000 it will appear at C000 and E000. Similarly, writing a byte to C000 will appear at C000 and E000.)

User I/O

There are no empty spaces in the memory map for implementing input ports except the switchable RAM bank area (not an option on the Super Smart Card since it's RAM bank is always enabled).

An output only port may be implemented anywhere between A000-FDFF. If implemented in a RAM area care should be taken to use an area of RAM not used for anything else. (FE00 and above can't be used because the CPU doesn't generate an external /WR for these locations.)

If you have a cart with an MBC1, a ROM 4Mbit or smaller, and a RAM 8Kbyte or smaller (or no RAM) then you can use pins 6 & 7 of the MBC1 for 2 digital output pins for whatever purpose you wish. To use them you must first put the MBC1 into 4MbitROM/32KbyteRAM mode by writing 01 to 6000. The two least significant bits you write to 4000 will then be output to these pins.

Reserved Memory Locations

The following is a table of reserved memory addresses in ROM space. If you need either interrupt to be serviced, here are the entry points for the possible interrupt sources.

Address	Explanation
0000	Restart $00 Address (RST $00 calls this address.)
0008	Restart $08 Address (RST $08 calls this address.)
0010	Restart $10 Address (RST $10 calls this address.)
0018	Restart $18 Address (RST $18 calls this address.)
0020	Restart $20 Address (RST $20 calls this address.)
0028	Restart $28 Address (RST $28 calls this address.)
0030	Restart $30 Address (RST $30 calls this address.)
0038	Restart $38 Address (RST $38 calls this address.)
0040	Vertical Blank Interrupt Start Address

0048	LCDC Status Interrupt Start Address
0050	Timer Overflow Interrupt Start Address
0058	Serial Transfer Completion Interrupt Start Address
0060	High-to-Low of P10-P13 Interrupt Start Address

An internal information area is located at 0100-014F in each cartridge. It contains the following values:

Address	Explanation
0100-0103	This is the begin code execution point in a cart. Usually there is a NOP and a JP instruction here but not always.
0104-0133	Scrolling Nintendo graphic: CE ED 66 66 CC 0D 00 0B 03 73 00 83 00 0C 00 0D 00 08 11 1F 88 89 00 0E DC CC 6E E6 DD DD D9 99 BB BB 67 63 6E 0E EC CC DD DC 99 9F BB B9 33 3E (PROGRAM WON'T RUN IF CHANGED!!!)
0134-0142	Title of the game in UPPER CASE ASCII. If it is less than 16 characters then the remaining bytes are filled with 00's.
0143	$80 = Color GB, $00 or other = not Color GB
0144	Ascii hex digit, high nibble of licensee code (new).
0145	Ascii hex digit, low nibble of licensee code (new). (These are normally $00 if [$014B] # $33.)
0146	GB/SGB Indicator (00 = GameBoy, 03 = Super GameBoy functions) (Super GameBoy functions won't work if # $03.)
0147	Cartridge type: 0 - ROM ONLY 12 - ROM+MBC3+RAM 1 - ROM+MBC1 13 - ROM+MBC3+RAM+BATT 2 - ROM+MBC1+RAM 19 - ROM+MBC5 3 - ROM+MBC1+RAM+BATT 1A - ROM+MBC5+RAM 5 - ROM+MBC2 1B - ROM+MBC5+RAM+BATT 6 - ROM+MBC2+BATTERY 1C - ROM+MBC5+RUMBLE 8 - ROM+RAM 1D - ROM+MBC5+RUMBLE+SRAM 9 - ROM+RAM+BATTERY 1E - ROM+MBC5+RUMBLE+SRAM+BATT B - ROM+MMM01 1F - Pocket Camera C - ROM+MMM01+SRAM FD - Bandai TAMA5 D - ROM+MMM01+SRAM+BATT FE - Hudson HuC-3 F - ROM+MBC3+TIMER+BATT FF - Hudson HuC-1 10 - ROM+MBC3+TIMER+RAM+BATT 11 - ROM+MBC3

0148	ROM size:
	
	      0 - 256Kbit = 32KByte = 2 banks
	      1 - 512Kbit = 64KByte = 4 banks
	      2 - 1Mbit = 128KByte = 8 banks
	      3 - 2Mbit = 256KByte = 16 banks
	      4 - 4Mbit = 512KByte = 32 banks
	      5 - 8Mbit = 1MByte = 64 banks
	      6 - 16Mbit = 2MByte = 128 banks
	   $52 - 9Mbit = 1.1MByte = 72 banks
	   $53 - 10Mbit = 1.2MByte = 80 banks
	   $54 - 12Mbit = 1.5MByte = 96 banks

0149	RAM size:
	
	      0 - None
	      1 - 16kBit = 2kB = 1 bank
	      2 - 64kBit = 8kB = 1 bank
	      3 - 256kBit = 32kB = 4 banks
	      4 - 1MBit = 128kB = 16 banks

014A	Destination code:
	
	      0 - Japanese
	      1 - Non-Japanese

014B	Licensee code (old):
	
	     33 - Check 0144/0145 for Licensee code.
	     79 - Accolade
	     A4 - Konami
	
	Super GameBoy function won't work if # $33.

014C	Mask ROM Version number (Usually $00)
014D	Complement check. PROGRAM WON'T RUN ON GB IF NOT CORRECT!!! It will run on Super GB, however, if incorrect.
014E-014F	Checksum (higher byte first) produced by adding all bytes of a cartridge except for two checksum bytes and taking two lower bytes of the result. (GameBoy ignores this value.)

Cartridge Types

The following define the byte at cart location 0147:

MBC type	Comments
ROM ONLY	This is a 32kB (256kb) ROM and occupies 0000-7FFF.
MBC1	MBC1 has two different maximum memory modes:

- 16 Mbit ROM / 8 KByte RAM
- 4 Mbit ROM / 32 KByte RAM

The MBC1 defaults to 16 Mbit ROM / 8 KByte RAM mode on power up. Writing a value (0000000S - S = Memory model select) into 6000-7FFF area will select the memory model to use. S = 0 selects 16/8 mode. S = 1 selects 4/32 mode.

Writing a value (000BBBBB - B = bank select bits) into 2000-3FFF area will select an appropriate ROM bank at 4000-7FFF. Values of 00000 and 00001 do the same thing and point to ROM bank 1. ROM bank 0 is not accessible from 4000-7FFF and can only be read from 0000-3FFF.

If memory model is set to 4/32: Writing a value (000000BB - B = bank select bits) into 4000-5FFF area will select an appropriate RAM bank at A000-C000. Before you can read or write to a RAM bank you have to enable it by writing a 00001010 into 0000-1FFF area*.
To disable RAM bank operations write any value but 00001010 into 0000-1FFF area. Disabling a RAM bank probably protects that bank from false writes during power down of the GameBoy.

(NOTE: Nintendo suggests values $0A to enable and $00 to disable RAM bank!!)

If memory model is set to 16/8 mode: Writing a value (000000BB - B = bank select bits) into 4000-5FFF area will set the two most significant ROM address lines.

* NOTE: The Super Smart Card doesn't require this operation because it's RAM bank is ALWAYS enabled. Include this operation anyway to allow your code to work with both.

MBC2	This memory controller works much like the MBC1 controller with the following exceptions:

a. MBC2 will work with ROM sizes up to 2Mbit. < 4000-7FFF. at bank ROM appropriate an select will area 2000-3FFF into bits) B="bank" - (0000BBBB value a Writing>
b. RAM switching is not provided. Unlike the MBC1 which uses external RAM, MBC2 has 512 x 4 bits of RAM which is in the controller itself. It still requires an external battery to save data during power-off though.
c. The least significant bit of the upper address byte must be zero to enable or disable cart RAM. For example the following addresses can be used to enable or disable cart RAM: 0000-00FF, 0200-02FF, 0400-04FF, ..., 1E00-1EFF. The suggested address range to use for MBC2 ram enable /

	disable is 0000-00FF. d. The least significant bit of the upper address byte must be "1" to select a ROM bank. For example the following addresses can be used to select a ROM bank: 2100-21FF, 2300-23FF, 2500-25FF, ..., 3F00-3FFF. The suggested address range to use for MBC2 rom bank selection is 2100-21FF.
MBC3	This controller is similar to MBC1 except it accesses all 16 Mbits of ROM without requiring any writes to the 4000-5FFF area. Writing a value (0BBBBBBB - B = bank select bits) into 2000-3FFF area will select an appropriate ROM bank at 4000-7FFF. Also, this MBC has a built-in battery-backed Real Time Clock (RTC) not found in any other MBC. Some MBC3 carts do not support it (WarioLand II non-color version) but some do (Harvest Moon/Japanese version.)
MBC5	This controller is the first MBC that is guaranteed to run in GameBoy Color double-speed mode but it appears the other MBC's run fine in GBC double-speed mode as well. It is similar to the MBC3 (but no RTC) but can access up to 64 Mbits of ROM and up to 1 Mbit of RAM. The lower 8 bits of the 9-bit ROM bank select is written to the 2000-2FFF area while the upper bit is written to the least significant bit of the 3000-3FFF area. Writing a value (0000BBBB - B = bank select bits) into 4000-5FFF area will select an appropriate RAM bank at A000-BFFF if the cart contains RAM. Ram sizes are 64 Kbit, 256 Kbit and 1 Mbit. Also, this is the first MBC that allows ROM bank 0 to appear in the 4000-7FFF range by writing $0000 to the ROM bank select.
Rumble Carts	Rumble carts use an MBC5 memory bank controller. Rumble carts can only have up to 256 Kbits of RAM. The highest RAM address line that allows 1 Mbit of RAM on MBC5 non-rumble carts is used as the motor on/off for the rumble cart. Writing a value (0000MBBB - M = motor, B = bank select bits) into 4000-5FFF area will select an appropriate RAM bank at A000-BFFF if the cart contains RAM. RAM sizes are 64 Kbit or 256 Kbit. To turn the rumble motor on set M = 1, M = 0 turns it off.
HuC1	This controller (Memory Bank / Infrared Controller) made by Hudson Soft appears to be very similar to an MBC1 with the main difference being that it supports InfraRed LED input / output. The Japanese cart "Fighting Phoenix" (internal cart name: SUPER B DAMAN) is known to contain this chip.

Stop Mode

The STOP command halts the GameBoy processor and screen until any button is pressed. The GB and GBP screen goes white with a single dark horizontal line. The GBC screen goes black.

Low-Power Mode

It is recommended that the HALT instruction be used whenever possible to reduce power consumption and extend the life of the batteries. This command stops the system clock reducing the power consumption of both the CPU and ROM.

The CPU will remain suspended until an interrupt occurs at which point the interrupt is serviced and then the instruction immediately following the HALT is executed. If interrupts are disabled (DI) then halt doesn't suspend operation but it does cause the program counter to stop counting for one instruction on the GB, GBP and SGB as mentioned below.

Depending on how much CPU time is required by a game, the HALT instruction can extend battery life anywhere from 5 to 50% or possibly more.

WARNING: The instruction immediately following the HALT instruction is "skipped" when interrupts are disabled (DI) on the GB, GBP, and SGB. As a result, always put a NOP after the HALT instruction. This instruction skipping doesn't occur when interrupts are enabled (EI). This "skipping" does not seem to occur on the GameBoy Color even in regular GB mode. ($143=$00)

EXAMPLES from Martin Korth who documented this problem: (assuming interrupts disabled for all examples)

1. This code causes the 'a' register to be incremented TWICE.
2.
3.   76   halt
4.   3C   inc a

5. The next example is a bit more difficult. The following code
6.
7.   76   halt
8.   FA 34 12   ld   a,(1234)

    is effectively executed as

        76   halt
        FA FA 34   ld   a,(34FA)
        12   ld   (de),a

9. Finally an interesting side effect
10.

```
11.        76           halt
12.        76           halt
```

This combination hangs the cpu. The first HALT causes the second HALT to be repeated, which therefore causes the following command (=itself) to be repeated - again and again. Placing a NOP between the two halts would cause the NOP to be repeated once, the second HALT wouldn't lock the cpu.

Below is suggested code for GameBoy programs:

```
; **** Main Game Loop ****
Main:
      halt                        ; stop system clock
                                  ; return from halt when interrupted
      nop                         ; (See WARNING above.)

      ld      a,(VblnkFlag)
      or      a                   ; V-Blank interrupt ?
      jr      z,Main              ; No, some other interrupt

      xor     a
      ld      (VblnkFlag),a   ; Clear V-Blank flag

      call    Controls            ; button inputs
      call    Game                ; game operation

      jr      Main

; **** V-Blank Interrupt Routine ****
Vblnk:
      push    af
      push    bc
      push    de
      push    hl

      call    SpriteDma       ; Do sprite updates

      ld      a,1
      ld      (VblnkFlag),a

      pop     hl
      pop     de
      pop     bc
      pop     af
      reti
```

The main GameBoy screen buffer (background) consists of 256x256 pixels or 32x32 tiles

(8x8 pixels each). Only 160x144 pixels can be displayed on the screen. Registers SCROLLX and SCROLLY hold the coordinates of background to be displayed in the left upper corner of the screen. Background wraps around the screen (i.e. when part of it goes off the screen, it appears on the opposite side.)

An area of VRAM known as Background Tile Map contains the numbers of tiles to be displayed. It is organized as 32 rows of 32 bytes each. Each byte contains a number of a tile to be displayed. Tile patterns are taken from the Tile Data Table located either at $8000-8FFF or $8800-97FF. In the first case, patterns are numbered with unsigned numbers from 0 to 255 (i.e. pattern #0 lies at address $8000). In the second case, patterns have signed numbers from -128 to 127 (i.e. pattern #0 lies at address $9000). The Tile Data Table address for the background can be selected by setting the LCDC register.

There are two different Background Tile Maps. One is located from $9800-9Bff. The other from $9C00-9FFF. Only one of these can be viewed at any one time. The currently displayed background can be selected by setting the LCDC register.

Besides background, there is also a "window" overlaying the background. The window is not scrollable i.e. it is always displayed starting from its left upper corner. The location of a window on the screen can be adjusted via WNDPOSX and WNDPOSY registers. Screen coordinates of the top left corner of a window are WNDPOSX-7, WNDPOSY. The tile numbers for the window are stored in the Tile Data Table. None of the windows tiles are ever transparent. Both the Background and the window share the same Tile Data Table.

Both background and window can be disabled or enabled separately via bits in the LCDC register.

If the window is used and a scan line interrupt disables it (either by writing to LCDC or by setting WX > 166) and a scan line interrupt a little later on enables it then the window will resume appearing on the screen at the exact position of the window where it left off earlier. This way, even if there are only 16 lines of useful graphics in the window, you could display the first 8 lines at the top of the screen and the next 8 lines at the bottom if you wanted to do so.

WX may be changed during a scan line interrupt (to either cause a graphic distortion effect or to disable the window (WX > 166)) but changes to WY are not dynamic and won't be noticed until the next screen redraw.

The tile images are stored in the Tile Pattern Tables. Each 8x8 image occupies 16 bytes, where each 2 bytes represent a line:

```
  Tile:                                    Image:

  .33333..                        .33333.. -> 01111100 -> $7C
  22...22.                                   01111100 -> $7C
  11...11.                        22...22. -> 00000000 -> $00
```

```
2222222. <-- digits                        11000110 -> $C6
33...33.      represent       11...11. -> 11000110 -> $C6
22...22.      color                        00000000 -> $00
11...11.      numbers         2222222. -> 00000000 -> $00
........                                   11111110 -> $FE
                              33...33. -> 11000110 -> $C6
                                           11000110 -> $C6
                              22...22. -> 00000000 -> $00
                                           11000110 -> $C6
                              11...11. -> 11000110 -> $C6
                                           00000000 -> $00
                              ........ -> 00000000 -> $00
                                           00000000 -> $00
```

As it was said before, there are two Tile Pattern Tables at $8000-8FFF and at $8800-97FF. The first one can be used for sprites, the background, and the window display. Its tiles are numbered from 0 to 255. The second table can be used for the background and the window display and its tiles are numbered from -128 to 127.

Sprites

GameBoy video controller can display up to 40 sprites either in 8x8 or in 8x16 pixels. Because of a limitation of hardware, only ten sprites can be displayed per scan line. Sprite patterns have the same format as tiles, but they are taken from the Sprite Pattern Table located at $8000-8FFF and have unsigned numbering. Sprite attributes reside in the Sprite Attribute Table (OAM - Object Attribute Memory) at $FE00-FE9F. OAM is divided into 40 4-byte blocks each of which corresponds to a sprite.
In 8x16 sprite mode, the least significant bit of the sprite pattern number is ignored and treated as 0.

When sprites with different x coordinate values overlap, the one with the smaller x coordinate (closer to the left) will have priority and appear above any others.

When sprites with the same x coordinate values overlap, they have priority according to table ordering. (i.e. $FE00 - highest, $FE04 - next highest, etc.)
Please note that Sprite X = 0, Y = 0 hides a sprite. To display a sprite use the following formulas:

```
SpriteScreenPositionX (Upper left corner of sprite) = SpriteX - 8
SpriteScreenPositionY (Upper left corner of sprite) = SpriteY - 16
```
To display a sprite in the upper left corner of the screen set sprite X = 8, Y = 16.

Only 10 sprites can be displayed on any one line. When this limit is exceeded, the lower priority sprites (priorities listed above) won't be displayed. To keep unused sprites from affecting onscreen sprites set their Y coordinate to Y = 0 or Y >= 144 + 16. Just setting the X coordinate to X = 0 or X >= 160 + 8 on a sprite will hide it but it will still affect other sprites sharing the same lines.

Blocks have the following format:

Byte0	Y position on the screen
Byte1	X position on the screen
Byte2	Pattern number 0-255 (Unlike some tile numbers, sprite pattern numbers are unsigned. LSB is ignored (treated as 0) in 8x16 mode.)
Byte3	Flags:

	Bit7	Priority	If this bit is set to 0, sprite is displayed on top of background & window. If this bit is set to 1, then sprite will be hidden behind colors 1, 2, and 3 of the background & window. (Sprite only prevails over color 0 of BG & win.)
	Bit6	Y flip	Sprite pattern is flipped vertically if this bit is set to 1.
	Bit5	X flip	Sprite pattern is flipped horizontally if this bit is set to 1.
	Bit4	Palette number	Sprite colors are taken from OBJ1PAL if this bit is set to 1 and from OBJ0PAL otherwise

Sprite RAM Bug

There is a flaw in the GameBoy hardware that causes trash to be written to OAM RAM if the following commands are used while their 16-bit content is in the range of $FE00 to $FEFF:

```
inc    rp      (rp = bc, de, or hl)
dec    rp

ldi    a, (hl)
ldd    a, (hl)

ldi    (hl), a
ldd    (hl), a
```

Only sprites 1 & 2 ($FE00 & $FE04) are not affected by these instructions.

Sound

There are two sound channels connected to the output terminals SO1 and SO2. There is also a input terminal Vin connected to the cartridge. It can be routed to either of both output terminals. GameBoy circuitry allows producing sound in four different ways:

- o   Quadrangular wave patterns with sweep and envelope functions
- o   Quadrangular wave patterns with envelope functions
- o   Voluntary wave patterns from wave RAM
- o   White noise with an envelope function

These four sounds can be controlled independantly and then mixed separately for each of the

output terminals. Sound registers may be set at all times while producing sound.
When setting the initial value of the envelope and restarting the length counter, set the initial flag to 1 and initialize the data.

Under the following situations the Sound ON flag is reset and the sound output stops:

1. When the sound output is stopped by the length counter
2. When overflow occurs at the addition mode while sweep is operating at sound 1.

When the Sound OFF flag for sound 3 (bit 7 of NR30) is set at 0, the cancellation of the OFF mode must be done by setting the sound OFF flag to 1. By initializing sound 3, it starts it's function.
When the All Sound OFF flag (bit 7 of NR52) is set to 0, the mode registers for sounds 1, 2, 3, and 4 are reset and the sound output stops.

NOTE: The setting of each sounds mode register must be done after the All Sound OFF mode is cancelled. During the All Sound OFF mode, each sound mode register cannot be set.

NOTE: During the all sound off mode, GB power consumption drops by 16% or more! While your programs aren't using sound then set the all sound off flag to 0. It defaults to 1 on reset.

These tend to be the two most important equations in converting between Hertz and GB frequency registers: (Sounds will have a 2.4% higher frequency on Super GB.)

$$gb = 2048 - (131072 / Hz) \qquad Hz = 131072 / (2048 - gb)$$

Timer

Sometimes it's useful to have a timer that interrupts at regular intervals for routines that require periodic or percise updates. The timer in the GameBoy has a selectable frequency of 4096, 16384, 65536, or 262144 Hertz. This frequency increments the Timer Counter (TIMA). When it overflows, it generates an interrupt. It is then loaded with the contents of Timer Modulo (TMA). The following are examples:

```
;This interval timer interrupts 4096 times per second

    ld  a,-1
    ld  ($FF06),a      ;Set TMA to divide clock by 1
    ld  a,4
    ld  ($FF07),a      ;Set clock to 4096 Hertz

;This interval timer interrupts 65536 times per second

    ld  a,-4
    ld  ($FF06),a      ;Set TMA to divide clock by 4
```

```
        ld   a,5
        ld   ($FF07),a      ;Set clock to 262144 Hertz
```

Serial I/O

The serial I/O port on the Gameboy is a very simple setup and is crude compared to standard RS-232 (IBM-PC) or RS-485 (Macintosh) serial ports. There are no start or stop bits so the programmer must be more creative when using this port.
During a transfer, a byte is shifted in at the same time that a byte is shifted out. The rate of the shift is deter- mined by whether the clock source is internal or external. If internal, the bits are shifted out at a rate of 8192Hz (122 microseconds) per bit. The most significant bit is shifted in and out first.

When the internal clock is selected, it drives the clock pin on the game link port and it stays high when not used. During a transfer it will go low eight times to clock in/out each bit.

A programmer initates a serial transfer by setting bit 7 of $FF02. This bit may be read and is automatically set to 0 at the completion of transfer. After this bit is set, an interrupt will then occur eight bit clocks later if the serial interrupt is enabled. If internal clock is selected and serial interrupt is enabled, this interrupt occurs 122*8 microseconds later. If external clock is selected and serial interrupt is enabled, an interrupt will occur eight bit clocks later.

Initiating a serial transfer with external clock will wait forever if no external clock is present. This allows a certain amount of synchronization with each serial port.
The state of the last bit shifted out determines the state of the output line until another transfer takes place.

If a serial transfer with internal clock is performed and no external GameBoy is present, a value of $FF will be received in the transfer.
The following code causes $75 to be shifted out the serial port and a byte to be shifted into $FF01:

```
        ld    a,$75
        ld   ($FF01),a
        ld    a,$81
        ld   ($FF02),a
```

Interrupt Procedure

The IME (interrupt master enable) flag is reset by DI and prohibits all interrupts. It is set by EI and acknowledges the interrupt setting by the IE register.

  1. When an interrupt is generated, the IF flag will be set
  2. If the IME flag is set & the corresponding IE flag is set, the following 3 steps are performed
  3. Reset the IME flag and prevent all interrupts
  4. The PC (program counter) is pushed onto the stack

5. Jump to the starting address of the interrupt

Resetting of the IF register, which was the cause of the interrupt, is done by hardware.

During the interrupt, pushing of registers to be used should be performed by the interrupt routine.
Once the interrupt service is in progress, all the interrupts will be prohibited. However, if the IME flag and the IE flag are controlled, a number of interrupt services can be made possible by nesting.

Return from an interrupt routine can be performed by either RETI or RET instruction.
The RETI instruction enables interrupts after doing a return operation.

If a RET is used as the final instruction in an interrupt routine, interrupts will remain disabled unless a EI was used in the interrupt routine or is used at a later time.
The interrupt will be acknowledged during opcode fetch period of each instruction.

Interrupt Descriptions

The following interrupts only occur if they have been enabled in the Interrupt Enable register ($FFFF) and if the interrupts have actually been enabled using the EI instruction.

V-Blank	The V-Blank interrupt occurs ~59.7 times a second on a regular GB and ~61.1 times a second on a Super GB (SGB). This interrupt occurs at the beginning of the V-Blank period. During this period video hardware is not using video ram so it may be freely accessed. This period lasts approximately 1.1 milliseconds.
LCDC Status	There are various reasons for this interrupt to occur as described by the STAT register ($FF40). One very popular reason is to indicate to the user when the video hardware is about to redraw a given LCD line. This can be useful for dynamically controlling the SCX / SCY registers ($FF43 / $FF42) to perform special video effects.
Timer Overflow	This interrupt occurs when the TIMA register ($FF05) changes from $FF to $00
Serial Transfer Completion	This interrupt occurs when a serial transfer has completed on the game link port.
High-to-Low of P10-P13	This interrupt occurs on a transition of any of the keypad input lines from high to low. Due to the fact that keypad "bounce"* is virtually always present, software should expect this interrupt to occur one or more times for every button press and one or more times for every button release.

Bounce tends to be a side effect of any button making or breaking a connection. During these periods, it is very common for a small amount of oscillation between high & low states to take

place.

```
FF00
   Name     - P1
   Contents - Register for reading joy pad info and determining system
type.    (R/W)

          Bit 7 - Not used
          Bit 6 - Not used
          Bit 5 - P15 out port
          Bit 4 - P14 out port
          Bit 3 - P13 in port
          Bit 2 - P12 in port
          Bit 1 - P11 in port
          Bit 0 - P10 in port


        This is the matrix layout for register $FF00:


               P14         P15
                |           |
       P10-------O-Right----O-A
                |           |
       P11-------O-Left-----O-B
                |           |
       P12-------O-Up-------O-Select
                |           |
       P13-------O-Down-----O-Start
                |           |


      Example code:

        Game: Ms. Pacman
        Address: $3b1


      LD   A, $20        <- bit 5 = $20
      LD   ($FF00), A   <- select P14 by setting it low
      LD   A, ($FF00)
      LD   A, ($FF00)   <- wait a few cycles
      CPL               <- complement A
      AND  $0F          <- get only first 4 bits
      SWAP A            <- swap it
      LD   B, A         <- store A in B
      LD   A, $10
      LD   ($FF00), A   <- select P15 by setting it low
      LD   A, ($FF00)
      LD   A, ($FF00)
      LD   A, ($FF00)
      LD   A, ($FF00)
      LD   A, ($FF00)
      LD   A, ($FF00)   <- Wait a few MORE cycles
      CPL               <- complement (invert)
      AND  $0F          <- get first 4 bits
      OR   B            <- put A and B together
```

```
        LD   B, A           <- store A in D
        LD   A, ($FF8B)     <- read old joy data from ram
        XOR  B              <- toggle w/current button bit
        AND  B              <- get current button bit back
        LD   ($FF8C),A      <- save in new Joydata storage
        LD   A, B           <- put original value in A
        LD   ($FF8B), A     <- store it as old joy data


        LD   A, $30         <- deselect P14 and P15
        LD   ($FF00), A     <- RESET Joypad
        RET                 <- Return from Subroutine
```

The button values using the above method are such:
```
    $80 - Start            $8 - Down
    $40 - Select           $4 - Up
    $20 - B                $2 - Left
    $10 - A                $1 - Right
```

    Let's say we held down A, Start, and Up. The value returned in
accumulator A would
    be $94

FF01
   Name   - SB
   Contents - Serial transfer data (R/W)
             8 Bits of data to be read/written

FF02
   Name   - SC
   Contents - SIO control (R/W)

             Bit 7 - Transfer Start Flag
                    0: Non transfer
                    1: Start transfer

             Bit 0 - Shift Clock
                    0: External Clock (500KHz Max.)
                    1: Internal Clock (8192Hz)

             Transfer is initiated by setting the Transfer Start Flag.
This bit may be
             read and is automatically set to 0 at the end of Transfer.

             Transmitting and receiving serial data is done
simultaneously. The
             received data is automatically stored in SB.

FF04
   Name   - DIV
   Contents - Divider Register (R/W)

             This register is incremented 16384 (~16779 on SGB) times a
second. Writing
             any value sets it to $00.
```

```
FF05
   Name     - TIMA
   Contents - Timer counter (R/W)

             This timer is incremented by a clock frequency specified by
the TAC
             register ($FF07). The timer generates an interrupt when it
overflows.

FF06
   Name     - TMA
   Contents - Timer Modulo (R/W)

             When the TIMA overflows, this data will be loaded.

FF07
   Name     - TAC
   Contents - Timer Control (R/W)

             Bit 2 - Timer Stop
                   0: Stop Timer
                   1: Start Timer

             Bits 1+0 - Input Clock Select
                     00: 4.096 KHz    (~4.194 KHz SGB)
                     01: 262.144 KHz  (~268.4 KHz SGB)
                     10: 65.536 KHz   (~67.11 KHz SGB)
                     11: 16.384 KHz   (~16.78 KHz SGB)

FF0F
   Name     - IF
   Contents - Interrupt Flag (R/W)

             Bit 4: Transition from High to Low of Pin number P10-P13
             Bit 3: Serial I/O transfer complete
             Bit 2: Timer Overflow
             Bit 1: LCDC (see STAT)
             Bit 0: V-Blank

   The priority and jump address for the above 5 interrupts are:

    Interrupt          Priority        Start Address

    V-Blank            1               $0040
    LCDC Status        2               $0048 - Modes 0, 1, 2
                                               LYC=LY coincide (selectable)
    Timer Overflow     3               $0050
    Serial Transfer    4               $0058 - when transfer is complete
    Hi-Lo of P10-P13   5               $0060


    * When more than 1 interrupts occur at the same time only the interrupt
with the
      highest priority can be acknowledged. When an interrupt is used a '0'
should be
      stored in the IF register before the IE register is set.
```

```
FF10
   Name     - NR 10
   Contents - Sound Mode 1 register, Sweep register (R/W)

              Bit 6-4 - Sweep Time
              Bit 3   - Sweep Increase/Decrease
                         0: Addition    (frequency increases)
                         1: Subtraction (frequency decreases)
              Bit 2-0 - Number of sweep shift (n: 0-7)

              Sweep Time: 000: sweep off - no freq change
                          001: 7.8 ms  (1/128Hz)
                          010: 15.6 ms (2/128Hz)
                          011: 23.4 ms (3/128Hz)
                          100: 31.3 ms (4/128Hz)
                          101: 39.1 ms (5/128Hz)
                          110: 46.9 ms (6/128Hz)
                          111: 54.7 ms (7/128Hz)

              The change of frequency (NR13,NR14) at each shift is
calculated by the
              following formula where X(0) is initial freq & X(t-1) is last
freq:
```

$$X(t) = X(t-1) +/- X(t-1)/2^n$$

```
FF11
   Name     - NR 11
   Contents - Sound Mode 1 register, Sound length/Wave pattern duty (R/W)

              Only Bits 7-6 can be read.

              Bit 7-6 - Wave Pattern Duty
              Bit 5-0 - Sound length data (t1: 0-63)

              Wave Duty: 00: 12.5% ( _--------_--------_-------- )
                         01: 25%   ( __-------__-------__------- )
                         10: 50%   ( ____-----____-----____----- )
(default)
                         11: 75%   ( _____---_____---_____--- )

              Sound Length = (64-t1)*(1/256) seconds
FF12
   Name     - NR 12
   Contents - Sound Mode 1 register, Envelope (R/W)

              Bit 7-4 - Initial volume of envelope
              Bit 3 -   Envelope UP/DOWN
                          0: Attenuate
                          1: Amplify
              Bit 2-0 - Number of envelope sweep (n: 0-7) (If zero, stop
envelope
                          operation.)

              Initial volume of envelope is from 0 to $F. Zero being no
sound.
```

```
                 Length of 1 step = n*(1/64) seconds

FF13
   Name      - NR 13
   Contents - Sound Mode 1 register, Frequency lo (W)

                 Lower 8 bits of 11 bit frequency (x). Next 3 bit are in NR 14
($FF14)

FF14
   Name      - NR 14
   Contents - Sound Mode 1 register, Frequency hi (R/W)

                 Only Bit 6 can be read.

                 Bit 7 - Initial (when set, sound restarts)
                 Bit 6 - Counter/consecutive selection
                 Bit 2-0 - Frequency's higher 3 bits (x)

                 Frequency = 4194304/(32*(2048-x)) Hz
                           = 131072/(2048-x) Hz

                 Counter/consecutive Selection

                  0 = Regardless of the length data in NR11 sound can be
produced
                      consecutively.
                  1 = Sound is generated during the time period set by the
length data in
                      NR11. After this period the sound 1 ON flag (bit 0 of
NR52) is reset.

FF16
   Name      - NR 21
   Contents - Sound Mode 2 register, Sound Length; Wave Pattern Duty (R/W)

                 Only bits 7-6 can be read.

                 Bit 7-6 - Wave pattern duty
                 Bit 5-0 - Sound length data (t1: 0-63)

                 Wave Duty: 00: 12.5% ( _--------_--------_-------- )
                            01: 25%   ( __-------__-------__------- )
                            10: 50%   ( ____-----____-----____----- )
(default)
                            11: 75%   ( _____---_____---_____--- )

                 Sound Length = (64-t1)*(1/256) seconds

FF17
   Name      - NR 22
   Contents - Sound Mode 2 register, envelope (R/W)

                 Bit 7-4 - Initial volume of envelope
                 Bit 3 -   Envelope UP/DOWN
                           0: Attenuate
```

```
                            1: Amplify
                 Bit 2-0 - Number of envelope sweep (n: 0-7)
                           (If zero, stop envelope operation.)

                 Initial volume of envelope is from 0 to $F. Zero being no
sound.
                 Length of 1 step = n*(1/64) seconds

FF18
   Name      - NR 23
   Contents - Sound Mode 2 register, frequency lo data (W)

                 Frequency's lower 8 bits of 11 bit data (x). Next 3 bits are
in NR 14
                 ($FF19).

FF19
   Name      - NR 24
   Contents - Sound Mode 2 register, frequency hi data (R/W)

                 Only bit 6 can be read.

                 Bit 7 - Initial (when set, sound restarts)
                 Bit 6 - Counter/consecutive selection
                 Bit 2-0 - Frequency's higher 3 bits (x)

                 Frequency = 4194304/(32*(2048-x)) Hz
                           = 131072/(2048-x) Hz

                 Counter/consecutive Selection
                  0 = Regardless of the length data in NR21  can be produced
consecutively.
                  1 = Sound is generated during the time period  the length
data in NR21.
                     After this period the sound 2 ON flag (bit 1 of NR52) is
reset.

FF1A
   Name      - NR 30
   Contents - Sound Mode 3 register, Sound on/off (R/W)

                 Only bit 7 can be read

                 Bit 7 - Sound OFF
                         0: Sound 3 output stop
                         1: Sound 3 output OK

FF1B
   Name      - NR 31
   Contents - Sound Mode 3 register, sound length (R/W)

                 Bit 7-0 - Sound length (t1: 0 - 255)

                 Sound Length = (256-t1)*(1/2) seconds

FF1C
```

```
   Name      - NR 32
   Contents - Sound Mode 3 register, Select output level (R/W)

             Only bits 6-5 can be read

             Bit 6-5 - Select output level
                       00: Mute
                       01: Produce Wave Pattern RAM Data as it is (4 bit
length)
                       10: Produce Wave Pattern RAM data shifted once
                           to the RIGHT (1/2)  (4 bit length)
                       11: Produce Wave Pattern RAM data shifted twice
                           to the RIGHT (1/4)  (4 bit length)

      * - Wave Pattern RAM is located from $FF30-$FF3f.

FF1D
   Name      - NR 33
   Contents - Sound Mode 3 register, frequency's lower data (W)

             Lower 8 bits of an 11 bit frequency (x).

FF1E
   Name      - NR 34
   Contents - Sound Mode 3 register, frequency's higher data (R/W)

             Only bit 6 can be read.

             Bit 7 - Initial (when set, sound restarts)
             Bit 6 - Counter/consecutive flag
             Bit 2-0 - Frequency's higher 3 bits (x).

             Frequency = 4194304/(64*(2048-x)) Hz
                       = 65536/(2048-x) Hz

             Counter/consecutive Selection
              0 = Regardless of the length data in NR31 sound can be
produced consecutively.
              1 = Sound is generated during the time period set by the
length data in NR31.
                    After this period the sound 3 ON flag (bit 2 of NR52) is
reset.

FF20
   Name      - NR 41
   Contents - Sound Mode 4 register, sound length (R/W)

             Bit 5-0 - Sound length data (t1: 0-63)

             Sound Length = (64-t1)*(1/256) seconds

FF21
   Name      - NR 42
   Contents - Sound Mode 4 register, envelope (R/W)

             Bit 7-4 - Initial volume of envelope
```

```
                Bit 3 -    Envelope UP/DOWN
                           0: Attenuate
                           1: Amplify
                Bit 2-0 - Number of envelope sweep (n: 0-7)
                           (If zero, stop envelope operation.)

                Initial volume of envelope is from 0 to $F. Zero being no
sound.
                Length of 1 step = n*(1/64) seconds

FF22
   Name      - NR 43
   Contents - Sound Mode 4 register, polynomial counter (R/W)

                Bit 7-4 - Selection of the shift clock frequency of the
polynomial counter
                Bit 3   - Selection of the polynomial counter's step
                Bit 2-0 - Selection of the dividing ratio of frequencies

                Selection of the dividing ratio of frequencies:
                000: f * 1/2^3 * 2
                001: f * 1/2^3 * 1
                010: f * 1/2^3 * 1/2
                011: f * 1/2^3 * 1/3
                100: f * 1/2^3 * 1/4
                101: f * 1/2^3 * 1/5
                110: f * 1/2^3 * 1/6
                111: f * 1/2^3 * 1/7          f = 4.194304 Mhz

                Selection of the polynomial counter step:
                0: 15 steps
                1: 7 steps

                Selection of the shift clock frequency of the polynomial
counter:

                0000: dividing ratio of frequencies * 1/2
                0001: dividing ratio of frequencies * 1/2^2
                0010: dividing ratio of frequencies * 1/2^3
                0011: dividing ratio of frequencies * 1/2^4
                     :                              :
                     :                              :
                     :                              :
                0101: dividing ratio of frequencies * 1/2^14
                1110: prohibited code
                1111: prohibited code

FF23
   Name      - NR 44
   Contents - Sound Mode 4 register, counter/consecutive; inital (R/W)

                Only bit 6 can be read.

                Bit 7 - Initial (when set, sound restarts)
                Bit 6 - Counter/consecutive selection
```

```
                    Counter/consecutive Selection
                 0 = Regardless of the length data in NR41 sound can be
produced consecutively.
                 1 = Sound is generated during the time period set by the
length data in NR41.
                     After this period the sound 4 ON flag (bit 3 of NR52) is
reset.

FF24
   Name      - NR 50
   Contents - Channel control / ON-OFF / Volume (R/W)

                Bit 7 - Vin->SO2 ON/OFF
                Bit 6-4 - SO2 output level (volume) (# 0-7)
                Bit 3 - Vin->SO1 ON/OFF
                Bit 2-0 - SO1 output level (volume) (# 0-7)

                Vin->SO1 (Vin->SO2)

                By synthesizing the sound from sound 1 through 4, the voice
input from Vin
                terminal is put out.
                0: no output
                1: output OK

FF25
    Name      - NR 51
    Contents - Selection of Sound output terminal (R/W)

                Bit 7 - Output sound 4 to SO2 terminal
                Bit 6 - Output sound 3 to SO2 terminal
                Bit 5 - Output sound 2 to SO2 terminal
                Bit 4 - Output sound 1 to SO2 terminal
                Bit 3 - Output sound 4 to SO1 terminal
                Bit 2 - Output sound 3 to SO1 terminal
                Bit 1 - Output sound 2 to SO1 terminal
                Bit 0 - Output sound 1 to SO1 terminal

FF26
    Name      - NR 52  (Value at reset: $F1-GB, $F0-SGB)
    Contents - Sound on/off (R/W)

                Bit 7 - All sound on/off
                        0: stop all sound circuits
                        1: operate all sound circuits
                Bit 3 - Sound 4 ON flag
                Bit 2 - Sound 3 ON flag
                Bit 1 - Sound 2 ON flag
                Bit 0 - Sound 1 ON flag

                Bits 0 - 3 of this register are meant to be status bits to
be read.
                 Writing to these bits does NOT enable/disable sound.

                 If your GB programs don't use sound then write $00 to this
register to
```

```
                  save 16% or more on GB power consumption.

FF30 - FF3F
   Name      - Wave Pattern RAM
   Contents - Waveform storage for arbitrary sound data

             This storage area holds 32 4-bit samples that are played back
upper 4 bits
             first.

FF40
   Name      - LCDC  (value $91 at reset)
   Contents - LCD Control (R/W)

             Bit 7 - LCD Control Operation *
                     0: Stop completely (no picture on screen)
                     1: operation

             Bit 6 - Window Tile Map Display Select
                     0: $9800-$9BFF
                     1: $9C00-$9FFF

             Bit 5 - Window Display
                     0: off
                     1: on

             Bit 4 - BG & Window Tile Data Select
                     0: $8800-$97FF
                     1: $8000-$8FFF <- Same area as OBJ

             Bit 3 - BG Tile Map Display Select
                     0: $9800-$9BFF
                     1: $9C00-$9FFF

             Bit 2 - OBJ (Sprite) Size
                     0: 8*8
                     1: 8*16 (width*height)

             Bit 1 - OBJ (Sprite) Display
                     0: off
                     1: on

             Bit 0 - BG Display
                     0: off
                     1: on

       * - Stopping LCD operation (bit 7 from 1 to 0) must be performed
during V-blank
          to work properly. V-blank can be confirmed when the value of LY
is greater
          than or equal to 144.

FF41
   Name      - STAT
   Contents - LCDC Status   (R/W)
```

```
              Bits 6-3 - Interrupt Selection By LCDC Status

              Bit 6 - LYC=LY Coincidence (Selectable)
              Bit 5 - Mode 10
              Bit 4 - Mode 01
              Bit 3 - Mode 00
                      0: Non Selection
                      1: Selection

              Bit 2 - Coincidence Flag
                      0: LYC not equal to LCDC LY
                      1: LYC = LCDC LY

              Bit 1-0 - Mode Flag
                        00: During H-Blank
                        01: During V-Blank
                        10: During Searching OAM-RAM
                        11: During Transfering Data to LCD Driver
```

    STAT shows the current status of the LCD controller.
    Mode 00: When the flag is 00 it is the H-Blank period and the CPU can access the display RAM
              ($8000-$9FFF).

    Mode 01: When the flag is 01 it is the V-Blank period and the CPU can access the display RAM
              ($8000-$9FFF).

    Mode 10: When the flag is 10 then the OAM is being used ($FE00-$FE9F). The CPU cannot access
              the OAM during this period

    Mode 11: When the flag is 11 both the OAM and display RAM are being used. The CPU cannot
              access either during this period.

    The following are typical when the display is enabled:

```
Mode 0   000___000___000___000___000___000___000_____
Mode 1   _____11111111111111__
Mode 2   ___2_____2_____2_____2_____2_____2_____2_
Mode 3   _____33_____33_____33_____33_____33_____33_____3
```


      The Mode Flag goes through the values 0, 2, and 3 at a cycle of about 109uS. 0 is
      present about 48.6uS, 2 about 19uS, and 3 about 41uS. This is interrupted every
      16.6ms by the VBlank (1). The mode flag stays set at 1 for about 1.08 ms. (Mode 0
      is present between 201-207 clks, 2 about 77-83 clks, and 3 about 169-175 clks. A
      complete cycle through these states takes 456 clks. VBlank lasts 4560 clks. A
      complete screen refresh occurs every 70224 clks.)

```
FF42
   Name      - SCY
   Contents - Scroll Y   (R/W)

               8 Bit value $00-$FF to scroll BG Y screen position.

FF43
   Name      - SCX
   Contents - Scroll X   (R/W)

               8 Bit value $00-$FF to scroll BG X screen position.

FF44
   Name      - LY
   Contents - LCDC Y-Coordinate (R)

              The LY indicates the vertical line to which the present data is
transferred
              to the LCD Driver. The LY can take on any value between 0
through 153. The
              values between 144 and 153 indicate the V-Blank period. Writing
will reset
              the counter.

FF45
   Name      - LYC
   Contents - LY Compare  (R/W)

              The LYC compares itself with the LY. If the values are the same
it causes
              the STAT to set the coincident flag.

FF46
   Name      - DMA
   Contents - DMA Transfer and Start Address (W)

   The DMA Transfer (40*28 bit) from internal ROM or RAM ($0000-$F19F) to
the OAM
   (address $FE00-$FE9F) can be performed. It takes 160 microseconds for
the transfer.

   40*28 bit = #140 or #$8C.  As you can see, it only transfers $8C bytes
of data. OAM
   data is $A0 bytes long, from $0-$9F.

   But if you examine the OAM data you see that 4 bits are not in use.

   40*32 bit = #$A0, but since 4 bits for each OAM is not used it's 40*28
bit.

   It transfers all the OAM data to OAM RAM.

   The DMA transfer start address can be designated every $100 from address
$0000-$F100.
   That means $0000, $0100, $0200, $0300....
```

As can be seen by looking at register $FF41 Sprite RAM ($FE00 - $FE9F) is not always
available. A simple routine that many games use to write data to Sprite memory is
shown below. Since it copies data to the sprite RAM at the appro- priate times it
removes that responsibility from the main program.
All of the memory space, except high ram ($FF80-$FFFE), is not accessible during DMA.
Because of this, the routine below must be copied & executed in high ram. It is
usually called from a V-blank Interrupt.

Example program:

```
    org    $40
    jp     VBlank

    org    $ff80
VBlank:
    push   af            <- Save A reg & flags
    ld     a, BASE_ADRS  <- transfer data from BASE_ADRS
    ld     ($ff46), a    <- put A into DMA registers
    ld     a, 28h        <- loop length
Wait:                    <- We need to wait 160 microseconds.
    dec    a             <-  4 cycles - decrease A by 1
    jr     nz, Wait      <- 12 cycles - branch if Not Zero to Wait
    pop    af            <- Restore A reg & flags
    reti                 <- Return from interrupt
```


FF47
   Name   - BGP
   Contents - BG & Window Palette Data (R/W)

             Bit 7-6 - Data for Dot Data 11 (Normally darkest color)
             Bit 5-4 - Data for Dot Data 10
             Bit 3-2 - Data for Dot Data 01
             Bit 1-0 - Data for Dot Data 00 (Normally lightest color)

             This selects the shade of grays to use for the background
(BG) & window
             pixels. Since each pixel uses 2 bits, the corresponding shade
will be
             selected from here.

FF48
   Name   - OBP0
   Contents - Object Palette 0 Data (R/W)

             This selects the colors for sprite palette 0. It works
exactly as BGP
             ($FF47) except each each value of 0 is transparent.

FF49

```
   Name     - OBP1
   Contents - Object Palette 1 Data (R/W)

             This Selects the colors for sprite palette 1. It works
exactly as OBP0
             ($FF48). See BGP for details.

FF4A
   Name     - WY
   Contents - Window Y Position  (R/W)

             0 <= WY <= 143

             WY must be greater than or equal to 0 and must be less than
or equal to
             143 for window to be visible.

FF4B
   Name     - WX
   Contents - Window X Position  (R/W)

             0 <= WX <= 166

             WX must be greater than or equal to 0 and must be less than
or equal to
             166 for window to be visible.

             WX is offset from absolute screen coordinates by 7. Setting
the window to
             WX=7, WY=0 will put the upper left corner of the window at
absolute screen
             coordinates 0,0.

             Lets say WY = 70 and WX = 87. The window would be positioned
as so:

                   0                      80                 159
                    _____
                0 |                                          |
                  |                    |                     |
                  |                                          |
                  |         Background Display               |
                  |             Here                         |
                  |                                          |
                  |                                          |
               70 |         -          +-------------------|
                  |                    |  80,70             |
                  |                    |                    |
                  |                    |   Window Display   |
                  |                    |        Here        |
                  |                    |                    |
                  |                    |                    |
              143 |_____|_____|


             OBJ Characters (Sprites) can still enter the window. None of the
```

```
window colors
         are transparent so any background tiles under the window are
hidden.

FFFF
   Name     - IE
   Contents - Interrupt Enable (R/W)

              Bit 4: Transition from High to Low of Pin
                     number P10-P13.
              Bit 3: Serial I/O transfer complete
              Bit 2: Timer Overflow
              Bit 1: LCDC (see STAT)
              Bit 0: V-Blank

              0: disable
              1: enable
```

This topic is one I grabbed off the internet. It is a method to have the link port talk in a way that modern computers can understand it. I.e. at RS 232 levels and at 9600 bps. I did not design this project, nor did I code it. I show it to have a look at some GameBoy source code.

Download the sources here.

The sourcecode

```
;*********************************
;* RS232    9600,n,8,1           *
;*                               *
;*     through serial port       *
;*                               *
;* Ken Kaarvik    May21/99       *
;*                               *
;*********************************


;Talk to a RS232 device at 9800,n,8,1
;
;Pin outs - wire through a MAX-232
;
;CGB            MAX-232         9pin serial
;                               port on computer
;   +5V-----------+---+
;                 |   |
;                16   =
;                 |   |+
;                 |   |
;              |~~~~~~~|
;              |  16  2 |
;              |        |
;< Pin 4------|12    13|------3 <
;> Sout------|11    14|------2 >
;              |        |
;          +--|4     1|--+
;        +|  |        |  |+
;         =  |        |  =
;         |  |        |  |
```

```
;            +--|5       3|--+
;            |            |
;            |__15__6_|
;               |    |
;               |    =
;               |    |+
;   gnd----------+---+--------5
;
; (4) caps @10uF Note polarity
;

display_col            equ     $9800
blank                  equ     16
text_line              equ     $9800+$20*5

        SECTION    "Org $0", HOME
        ret

; Button Push Interrupt - For sending out data while waiting for input

        SECTION "Org $60",HOME[$60]

        push    af
        call    pad_Read
        call    send_test
        xor     a
        ldh     [$00],a
        pop     af
        reti


        INCLUDE "hardware.inc"
        INCLUDE "ibmpc1.inc"

        SECTION "Header",HOME[$0100]

        nop
        jp      Startup

        DB
        $CE,$ED,$66,$66,$CC,$0D,$00,$0B,$03,$73,$00,$83,$00,$0C,$00,$0D
        DB
        $00,$08,$11,$1F,$88,$89,$00,$0E,$DC,$CC,$6E,$E6,$DD,$DD,$D9,$99
        DB
        $BB,$BB,$67,$63,$6E,$0E,$EC,$CC,$DD,$DC,$99,$9F,$BB,$B9,$33,$3E

             ;0123456789ABCDE
        DB      "RS232          "
        DB      $80     ; $80=Color GB
        DB      0,0,0   ; SuperGameboy
        DB      0       ; CARTTYPE
                        ; --------
                        ; 0 - ROM ONLY
                        ; 1 - ROM+MBC1
                        ; 2 - ROM+MBC1+RAM
                        ; 3 - ROM+MBC1+RAM+BATTERY
```

```
                              ; 5 - ROM+MBC2
                              ; 6 - ROM+MBC2+BATTERY


        DB      0             ; ROMSIZE
                              ; -------
                              ; 0 - 256 kBit ( 32 kByte,  2 banks)
                              ; 1 - 512 kBit ( 64 kByte,  4 banks)
                              ; 2 -   1 MBit (128 kByte,  8 banks)
                              ; 3 -   2 MBit (256 kByte, 16 banks)
                              ; 3 -   4 MBit (512 kByte, 32 banks)


        DB      0             ; RAMSIZE
                              ; -------
                              ; 0 - NONE
                              ; 1 -  16 kBit ( 2 kByte, 1 bank )
                              ; 2 -  64 kBit ( 8 kByte, 1 bank )
                              ; 3 - 256 kBit (32 kByte, 4 banks)


        DW      $0000   ; Manufacturer


        DB      0       ; Version
        DB      0       ; Complement check
        DW      0       ; Checksum


        INCLUDE "memory1.asm"
        INCLUDE "keypad.asm"


        SECTION "Main",home[$0150]

Startup
        call    initialize

Main
        call    inc_counter
        call    read_rs232
        call    wait_vb
        call    write_to_screen
        jp      Main

send_test
        ld      a,[_PadDataEdge]        ; _PadData]
        cp      0
        ret     z

        cp      PADF_A
        jp      z, service_button_a

        cp      PADF_B
        jp      z, service_button_b

        cp      PADF_START
        jp      z, service_start

        cp      PADF_SELECT
        jp      z, service_select
```

```
        cp      PADF_UP
        jp      z, service_up

        cp      PADF_DOWN
        jp      z, service_down

        cp      PADF_LEFT
        jp      z, service_left

        cp      PADF_RIGHT
        jp      z, service_right
        ret

service_button_a
        ld      hl, a_button_text
        call    send_text
        ret

service_button_b
        ld      hl, b_button_text
        call    send_text
        ret

service_start
        ld      hl, start_text
        call    send_text
        ret

service_select
        ld      hl, select_text
        call    send_text
        ret

service_up
        ld      hl, up_text
        call    send_text
        ret

service_down
        ld      hl, down_text
        call    send_text
        ret

service_left
        ld      hl, left_text
        call    send_text
        ret
service_right
        ld      hl, right_text
        call    send_text
        ret

send_text
        ld      a, [hl+]
        cp      $80
        ret     z
```

```
        ld      b, a
        call    send_rs232
        jp      send_text

a_button_text
        db      "You pressed the A button ", $80

b_button_text
        db      "Hello world I pressed B ", $80

start_text
        db      "Start ", $80

select_text
        db      "Select ",$80

up_text
        db      "Up ", $80

down_text
        db      "Down ", $80

left_text
        db      "Left ", $80

right_text
        db      "Right ", $80

title_text
        db      "RS232 send & receive"

clear_ram
        ld      a, blank
        ld      hl, raw_data
        ld      bc, 36
        call    mem_Set
        ret

read_rs232              ; read in byte at pin4
        ld      b, $80  ; $01
        ei

wait_for_start_bit
        ldh     a, [$56]
        bit     4, a
        jp      nz, wait_for_start_bit
        di
        call    delay_130us

read_next_bit
        ldh     a, [$56]
        swap    a
        rr      a       ; put pin 4 into carry
        rr      b
        jp      c, wait_for_stop_bit
```

```
        call    delay_104us
        jp      read_next_bit

wait_for_stop_bit
        call    delay_104us
        call    delay_104us

wait_for_after_stop_bit
        ld      a, b
        ld      [raw_data], a
        ret

send_rs232                      ; send byte in B out Sout
        ld      e, 8
        ld      a, 0            ; send start bit
        ldh     [$01], a
        ld      a, $83
        ldh     [$02], a
        call    delay_104us_send

send_next_bit
        rr      b
        ld      a, 0
        jp      nc, keep_it_zero
        ld      a, $FF

keep_it_zero
        ldh     [$01], a
        ld      a, $83
        ldh     [$02], a
        call    delay_104us_send
        dec     e
        jp      nz, send_next_bit

        ld      a, $FF          ; send stop bit
        ldh     [$01], a
        ld      a, $83
        ldh     [$02], a
        call    delay_104us_send
        ret

delay_130us
        ld      d, 23
d130    dec     d
        jp      nz, d130
        ret

delay_104us
        ld      d, 17
d104    dec     d
        jp      nz, d104
        ret

delay_104us_send
        ld      d, 16
```

```
d104s   dec     d
        jp      nz, d104s
        ret

inc_counter
        ld      a, [counter]
        inc     a
        ld      [counter], a
        ret

write_to_screen
        call    shift_display_left
        ld      a, [raw_data]
        ld      hl, text_line+19
        call    display_char

        ld      de, counter
        ld      hl, display_col+$20*3
        call    display_byte
        ret

shift_display_left
        ld      hl, text_line+1
        ld      de, text_line
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+2
        ld      de, text_line+1
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+3
        ld      de, text_line+2
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+4
        ld      de, text_line+3
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+5
        ld      de, text_line+4
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+6
        ld      de, text_line+5
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+7
        ld      de, text_line+6
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM
```

```
        ld      hl, text_line+8
        ld      de, text_line+7
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+9
        ld      de, text_line+8
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+10
        ld      de, text_line+9
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+11
        ld      de, text_line+10
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+12
        ld      de, text_line+11
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+13
        ld      de, text_line+12
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+14
        ld      de, text_line+13
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+15
        ld      de, text_line+14
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+16
        ld      de, text_line+15
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+17
        ld      de, text_line+16
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ld      hl, text_line+18
        ld      de, text_line+17
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM
```

```
        ld      hl, text_line+19
        ld      de, text_line+18
        ld      bc, 1
        call    mem_CopyVRAM

        ret

display_byte                    ; enter with value in [de]
        lcd_WaitVRAM
        ld      a, [de]
        ld      b, a
        and     $F0
        swap    a
        ld      [hl+], a
        lcd_WaitVRAM
        ld      a, b
        and     $0F
        ld      [hl], a
        ret

display_char
        bit     7, a            ;don't look up non print chars
        ret     nz

        add     a, 20           ;add imb char offset
        push    af
        lcd_WaitVRAM
        pop     af
        ld      [hl], a
        ret

initialize
        di
.wait   ldh     a, [$44]                ; LY LCDC compare
        cp      144
        jr      nc, .wait
        ld      a, 0
        ldh     [$40], a                ; LCDC lcd control

        ld      a, %10000000
        ldh     [$68], a                ; BCPS
        ld      a, %00000000            ; palette 0 0  bg
        ldh     [$69], a                ; BCPD
        ld      a,%00000000
        ldh     [$69],a

        ld      a, %11111110            ; palette 0 1
        ldh     [$69], a
        ld      a, %00011110
        ldh     [$69], a

        ld      a, %11111111            ; palette 0 2  fg test font
        ldh     [$69], a
        ld      a, %01111111
        ldh     [$69], a
```

```
        ld      a, %11111111            ; palette 0 3  fg ibm font
        ldh     [$69], a
        ld      a, %01111111
        ldh     [$69], a

        ;ld     a, %00000000            ; palette 1 0  bg
        ;ldh    [$69], a
        ;ld     a, %00000000
        ;ldh    [$69], a

        ld      hl, Font                ; load my test Font
        ld      de, $8000
        ld      bc, 20*8*2
        call    mem_Copy

        ld      hl, ibm_characters      ; load ibm font
        ld      de, $8000+20*8*2        ; $8140
        ld      bc, 8*128
        call    mem_CopyMono

        ld      a, 16                   ; blank char
        ld      hl, $9800
        ld      bc, 20*32*32
        call    mem_Set

        ld      a, 0
        ldh     [$42], a                ; SCY Scroll Y
        ldh     [$43], a                ; SCX Scroll X

        ld      a, %00000011
        ldh     [$47], a                ; BGP

        ld      a, $00000000
        ldh     [$FF], a                ; IE

        ld      hl, title_text
        ld      de, $9800
        ld      bc, 20
        call    mem_Copy_offset

        ld      a, %10010001
        ldh     [$40], a

        xor     a
        ld      [$FF24], a
        xor     a
        ld      [counter], a

        ld      a, %11000000
        ldh     [$56], a

        ld      a, $FF                  ; send stop bit
        ldh     [$01], a
        ld      a, $83
        ldh     [$02], a
```

```
        ld      a, IEF_HILO
        ldh     [rIE], a

        ret

wait_vb
        ldh     a, [$44]
        cp      144
        jp      nz, wait_vb
        ret

mem_Copy_offset::
        inc     b
        inc     c
        jr      .skip
.loop   ld      a, [hl+]
        add     a, 20           ; my offset hack
        ld      [de], a
        inc     de
.skip   dec     c
        jr      nz, .loop
        dec     b
        jr      nz, .loop
        ret

ibm_characters
        chr_IBMPC1      1,8

Font:
        DW      `01111100
        DW      `10000010
        DW      `10000010
        DW      `10000010
        DW      `10000010
        DW      `10000010
        DW      `01111100
        DW      `00000000

        DW      `00010000
        DW      `00110000
        DW      `00010000
        DW      `00010000
        DW      `00010000
        DW      `00010000
        DW      `00111000
        DW      `00000000

        DW      `01111100
        DW      `10000010
        DW      `00000010
        DW      `01111100
        DW      `10000000
        DW      `10000000
        DW      `11111110
        DW      `00000000
```

```
DW          `01111100
DW          `10000010
DW          `00000010
DW          `00011100
DW          `00000010
DW          `10000010
DW          `01111100
DW          `00000000

DW          `00001100
DW          `00010100
DW          `00100100
DW          `01000100
DW          `11111110
DW          `00000100
DW          `00000100
DW          `00000000

DW          `11111110
DW          `10000000
DW          `10000000
DW          `11111100
DW          `00000010
DW          `00000010
DW          `11111100
DW          `00000000

DW          `01111100
DW          `10000000
DW          `10000000
DW          `11111100
DW          `10000010
DW          `10000010
DW          `01111100
DW          `00000000

DW          `11111110
DW          `00000010
DW          `00000100
DW          `00001000
DW          `00010000
DW          `00010000
DW          `00010000
DW          `00000000

DW          `01111100
DW          `10000010
DW          `10000010
DW          `01111100
DW          `10000010
DW          `10000010
DW          `01111100
DW          `00000000

DW          `01111100
DW          `10000010
```

```
DW        `10000010
DW        `01111110
DW        `00000010
DW        `00000010
DW        `01111100
DW        `00000000

DW        `00111000
DW        `01000100
DW        `10000010
DW        `11111110
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000010
DW        `00000000

DW        `11111100
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000010
DW        `11111100
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000010
DW        `11111100
DW        `00000000

DW        `00111100
DW        `01000010
DW        `10000000
DW        `10000000
DW        `10000000
DW        `01000010
DW        `00111100
DW        `00000000

DW        `11111000
DW        `10000100
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000010
DW        `10000100
DW        `11111000
DW        `00000000

DW        `11111110
DW        `10000000
DW        `10000000
DW        `11111000
DW        `10000000
DW        `10000000
DW        `11111110
DW        `00000000

DW        `11111110
DW        `10000000
DW        `10000000
DW        `11111000
```

```
        DW        `10000000
        DW        `10000000
        DW        `10000000
        DW        `00000000

        DW        `00000000        ;16
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000

        DW        `11111111        ;17 web mark
        DW        `10000001
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000

        DW        `00000000        ;18 web space
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `00000000
        DW        `10000001
        DW        `11111111
        DW        `00000000

        DW        `11111100        ;19
        DW        `10000010        ;P for parity
        DW        `10000010
        DW        `11111100
        DW        `10000000
        DW        `10000000
        DW        `10000000
        DW        `00000000


        SECTION "GB_ram",BSS
counter         DS        1
raw_data        DS        1
```

Overview of the Gameboy Color hardware.

Just like "GNU's Not Unix", it also applies that the Gameboy Color is not the traditional Gameboy. And this topic is solely about the GBC (Gameboy Color). So I'm digging through the documents known to me to extract the essentials that apply to the GBC only.

In another chapter, I presented a circuit layout but that was not for the GBC. The GBC has a 130 pin IC as CPU, and the GB and GBP have an 80 pin device.

Technical data

CPU	8 bit 8085 derivative
Speed	4.2 MHz (normal mode) 8.4 MHz (fast mode)
Work RAM	32 KB
Video RAM	16 KB
Link ports	Wired, synchronous Optical
Screen size	66 mm diagonal
Resolution	160 x 144 pixels
Colours	32768
Energy	3 Volts at less than 100 mA

Memory map

The processor of the Gameboy lacks all I/O instructions so everything is memory mapped. Which makes things a little bit more complicated than with straight Z80 designs. Still, for small applications, it's no big deal to assign part of the memory map to I/O space. Below is the memory map for the GBC:

```
     0000 +-----------+
          |           |   16 KB ROM, bank 0, fixed
          |           |   address range = [0000 .. 3FFF]
     4000 +-----------+
          |           |   16 KB ROM, bank 1 to n, swapped in and out by an
MBC
          |           |   address range = [4000 .. 7FFF]
     8000 +-----------+
          |           |   8 KB video RAM, two banks, switchable by CPU
          |           |   address range = [8000 .. 9FFF]
     A000 +-----------+
          |           |   8 KB external RAM, inside the cart, if any is
present
          |           |   The MBC must take care of possible bankswitching
          |           |   address range = [A000 .. BFFF]
     C000 +-----------+
          |           |   4 KB work RAM (bank 0)
          |           |   address range = [C000 .. CFFF]
     D000 +-----------+
          |           |   4 KB work RAM (bank 1..7)
          |           |   address range = [D000 .. DFFF]
     E000 +-----------+
          |           |   Mirror of address range [C000 .. DDFF]
          |           |   Better not to be used
     FE00 +-----------+
          |           |   Sprite attribute table
     FEA0 +-----------|
          |           |   Do not use address range [FEA0 .. FEFF]
     FF00 +-----------+
```

```
                    |             |   GBC system I/O ports
                    |             |   address range [FF00 .. FF7F]
       FF80 +-----------+
                    |             |   High RAM
                    |             |   address range [FF80 .. FFFE]
       FFFF +-----------+
                    |             |   Interupt Enable register
                    |             |   address range [FFFF]
       0000 +-----------+
```

The **address range** consists of the addresses that are possible in that section of memory. The first number is the first possible address and the second number (the one after the two dots) is the LAST address of that range. It is INCLUSIVE. People aquainted with Modula-2 will be familiar with this notation.

CPU registers and flags

As opposed to a real Z80, the GBC CPU does not contain the IX, IY registers and also the auxilliary registerbank is missing. Which made a friend of mine conclude that it in fact was an 8085, but programmed with Zilog mnemonics. And since he writes assemblers for a hobby, I guess he's right. Check it all out at his website SB Projects.

Register	Purpose	Combines with	to form
A	Accumulator	F	AF
F	Status flags	A	AF
B	GP register	C	BC
C	Counter	B	BC
D	GP register	E	DE
E	GP register	D	DE
H	Pointer	L	HL
L	Pointer	H	HL
SP	Stackpointer	None	N/A
PC	Instruction pointer	None	N/A

The F register has only four flags, of which two have meaning for technical programmers. As can be seen here:

Flag	Bit position	Shows
Z	7	The ZERO flag indicates if the most recent operation resulted in a zero result in the accumulator (A register). If the Z flag is "1", the result was "0"...
C	6	This bit reflects the state of the CARRY flag after the

		most recent operation that involved it.
H	5	The HALF CARRY flag is used in BCD arithmetic, which is not quite usefull for engineers.
N	4	The N flag is also BCD related.

The remaining bits [0 .. 3] are always set to "0".

"Missing" Z80 instructions

If the Gameboy CPU is a stripped Z-80 processor, the following instructions have been removed. If, on the other hand, the GBC CPU is a souped up 8085, the situation is different.

Opcode	Explanation
08	EX AF, AF'
10	DJNZ PC + offset
22	LD (nn), HL
2A	LD HL, (nn)
32	LD (nn), A
3A	LD A, (nn)
CB3x	SRL reg
D3	OUT (n), A
D9	EXX
DB	IN A, (n)
DD group	This is a group of instructions whose first byte is the 0DDh value. This is typical for instructions involving the IX registerpair. Since the GBC CPU does not have an IX register, these instructions are meaningless.
E0	RET PO
E2	JP PO, nn
E3	EX (SP), HL
E4	CALL PO, nn
E8	RET PE
EA	JP PE, nn
EB	EX DE, HL
EC	CALL PE, nn

ED group	This is a group of instructions whose first byte is the 0EDh value. The involved instructions are:
	
	     ADC HL, rp SBC HL, rp
	     IN reg, (C) OUT reg, (C)
	     NEG IMx
	     RETI RETN
	     CPI CPIR
	     CPD CPDR
	     IND INDR
	     INI INIR
	     LDD LDDR
	     LDI LDIR
	     OUTI OTIR
	     OUTD OUTDR
	     RLD RRD
	     LD A, R LD R, A
	     LD I, A LD A, I
	     LD rp, (addr) LD (addr), BC
	     LD (addr), DE LD (addr), HL

F0	RET P
F2	JP P, nn
F4	JP P, nn
F8	RET M
FA	JP M, nn
FC	CALL M, nn
FD group	This is a group of instructions whose first byte is the 0FDh value. This is typical for instructions involving the IY registerpair. Since the GBC CPU does not have an IY register, these instructions are meaningless.

Apart from removing Z80 instructions from the Z80 (if Nintendo started out with a Z80 anyway, which is not so sure at all) some instructions were added as well. The following table shows these instructions with their opcodes:

Opcode	Instruction	Explanation
08	LD (nn), SP	Memory (nn) := SP

10	`STOP`	Stop oscillator and put CPU in powersave mode
22	`LDI    (HL), A`	Memory (HL) := A; HL := HL + 1
2A	`LDI    A, (HL)`	A := Memory (HL); HL := HL + 1
32	`LDD    (HL), A`	Memory (HL) := A; HL := HL - 1
3A	`LDD    A, (HL)`	A := Memory (HL); HL := HL - 1
D9	`RETI`	Return from interrupt. This is the last instruction from interrupt service routines.
E0	`LD     (FF00 + n), A`	Address := FF00 + n; Memory (Address) := A
E2	`LD     (FF00 + C), A`	Address := FF00 + Register (C); Memory (Address) := A
E8	`ADD    SP, nn`	SP := SP + nn nn = [-128 .. 127]
EA	`LD     (nn), A`	Memory (nn) := A
F0	`LD     A, (FF00 + n)`	A := Memory (FF00 + n)
F2	`LD     A, (FF00 + C)`	A := Memory (FF00 + C register)
F8	`LD     HL, SP + dd`	HL := SP + dd dd = [-128 .. 127]
FA	`LD     A, (nn)`	A := Memory (nn)
CB 3x	`SWAP   loc`	Exchange the values of the bitgroups [0..3] and [4..7] within the location 'loc', which can be any 8 bit register or the 8 bits addressed by the HL registerpair.

It doesn't really matter, if the GBC CPU is a descendant from the Z80 or an evolution from the 8080. But it makes me curious. So I want to make a comparison between the four involved CPU's: the Intel 8080, Intel 8085, Zilog Z80 and the Nintendo GBC. I will not compare the pinouts since neither of these chips was designed to be drop in replacements for eachother. Therefore I will use some kind of Kelvin scale. The Intel 8080 is zero Kelvin. It's the absolute bottom of what can be achieved. The rest goes up.

The table below contains all instructions relative to the 8080.

Processor:	8085	Z-80	GBC CPU

Additions:	RIM
	SIM
		JR disp
		JR <cond>, disp
		RLC reg
		RRC reg
		RL reg
		RR reg
		SLA reg
		SRA reg
		SRL reg
		BIT reg
		RES reg
		SET reg
		DJNZ disp
		EX AF, AF'
		EXX
		ED prefix group
		     35 extra
		DD prefix group
		     24 extra
		FD prefix group
		     24 extra
			JR disp
			JR <cond>, disp
			RLC reg
			RRC reg
			RL reg
			RR reg
			SLA reg
			SRA reg
			SRL reg
			BIT reg
			RES reg
			SET reg

I think this makes the case clear. The GMB CPU is definitely not a souped up 8080 or 8085. It doesn't even come close. The table clearly shows that the GameBoy Color CPU is a somehwat stripped Z80. Let this close the discussion. The GBC CPU is more related to the Z-80 (or one of it's second sources) than to any Intel processor.

The GameBoy Advance

After the GameBoy Color (GBC) there had to be a newer and better GameBoy. Which was to be the GameBoy Advance. You can see one in the picture on the left. The GBA is a major improvement over the GBC. I mention:

- Better display (smaller pixels, more contrast)
- Amazing sound
- Two extra, large, keys on the shoulders of the case
- An ARM 7 RISC CPU at 17 MHz, capable of directly addressing 32 MB of memory
- Fully downward compatible with ALL previous GameBoys
- The ARM 7 die contains a full GBC processing chipset
- Lots of RAM on board
- Better handling during gameplay
- 32 bit deep colours

This machine packs a great punch in a small package. The GBA has the same edge connector as the GBC. It has a full GBC chipset inside. In fact, the processor chip of the GBA consists of the full Z80-style GBC processor plus the ARM 7 processor on one die.

Under the hood.

Inside, we see the same kind of filling like in the GBC: just about nothing!

In the center is the Central Processing Unit. It has the Z-80, the ARM-7 and the LCD controller inside. To the left, we see the 4.2 MHz oscillator and to the right is the RAM chip. That's it! The Gameboy does it all with three VLSI chips and an oscillator.

To the right, we see the extension slot. It is the same as the one in all previous GameBoy's. Power, Ground, 8 data and 16 address lines. Plus some control lines. That's it. The GBA will gladly accept GameBoy cartridges and run with them as well. The GBA senses the kind of cart that is inserted and it will boot with the GBC processor if the cartridge is 'old style'.

If you look carefully in the picture, you see a kind of slotted gap just above the 'U' of 'AGB-CPU-02' on the PCB. This slot is there to accept the case of the cart and to align it with the contact fingers.

Anyway, in the bottom section of the slot is a small tumbler switch. The old GB carts are rectangular at the base. The new GBA carts have an indent there. So old carts push down the tumbler switch and activate the Z-80 style processor in GBC mode. If the switch stays up, the new ARM-7 CPU is booted.

You can witness this by looking at the display during a boot. GBA carts present another logo than the older GBC ones.
In the picture on the left, we see a closeup of the GBA cart-slot. If you look carefully, you can see the small switch that makes the difference

The GBA is wonderfull to play with. All the GBC games work 'out of the box', although the colours are quite different. The only drawback is that the pixels are smaller so the height of the image is smaller too. And there are black bars to the left and right of the playing field since the GBA has 250 pixels where the GBC has 'only' 160.

If you press the left shoulder button, the image is stretched to fill the screen horizontally. For some games (like V-rally) this is nice, but Pokemon Pinball gets harder to play. Press the right shoulder button and the image gets narrower again.

To the left we see the content of a GBA game cart. It is filled to the limit! They had to solder the Lithium cell on top of one of the memory chips to get everything in.

Look at the exge connector: it's the same as the one used in the GBC. Still, the ARM CPU is capable of addressing 32 MB of memory without an MBC unit. Apparently some kind of address multiplexing is required. I wonder how they do it...

To the right we see another GBA cart. This one has less crowded filling. It has only two integrated circuits to do it all. No battery required and still it keeps high scores and personal data.

The PCB explains how it's done: there's a 512 KB Flash memory on board. Plus a huge masked ROM. Judging the pincount (44) this must be a very large Read Only Memory. Or, since the ROM's are mostly made by the company that uses the 'MX' brand, this mask ROM is more than just a ROM. Below there is some evidence for this hypothesis.

Look at this game cart. The picture is a bit blurry, but we see the two integrated circuits. One is the big masked ROM again and the other one is a 24LCxx serial EEPROM. This memory will keep the stored data when power is removed. But the serial EEPROM is quite different to approach than a normal 'byte-wide' EEPROM. So some kind of auxilliary processing power or at least some glue logic must be present to handle the parallel - serial conversions. My guess is, that there is an MBC inside each 'Mask ROM' with the MX brand on top. Or at least some kind of additional processor.

By James Moxham

```
 ZINT Z80 INTERPRETER

                      Copyright 1996 James Moxham


 Chapter 1               LD group of instructions
 Chapter 2               Exchange group
 Chapter 3               The stack, POP and PUSH
 Chapter 4               Arithmetic
 Chapter 5               Jumps calls and returns
 Chapter 6               And or and xor
 Chapter 7               Bit set reset and test
 Chapter 8               Rotate and shift
 Chapter 9               General arithmetic and control
```

****

CHAPTER 1 The LD instruction

     The LD instruction is perhaps the most useful instruction in
the Z80. It is used to transfer data between registers, and to
and from memory. The most simple type of LD instruction is to
fill a register with a number: (Use F1)

LD A,6

     This loads the A register with the number 6, so the register
display now appears as

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE' HL' SP
06 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

     You can transfer this data to other registers

LD H,A

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE' HL' SP
06 000000 0000 0000 0600 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

copies the data in the A register to the H register. In fact H
could have been any one of A B C D E H or L. The data in the A
register remains unchanged.

Transferring data: Number bases

     As   most   programmers of BASIC will know numbers can be
represented in several forms, binary octal and hexadecimal being
common bases. The registers in the above example display the data
in hexadecimal form. Thus

LD A,255 gives

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE' HL' SP
FF 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

     FF is 255 in hexadecimal. The equivalent statement using
hexadecimal directly is

LD A,0FFH

     The H at the end signifies that the number is a hex number.
The 0 at the front is necessary because the first digit in any
number should always be between 0 and 9.

You can also use binary

LD A,11111111B

where the B at the end specifies the number is a binary
number.

The reason for using all three bases is because some
instructions are much easier to understand in one base.

Two other bases are supported, two's complement and direct ascii
characters and are discussed in detail in ch16. The following
instructions all do the same thing.

LD B,073H
LD B,01110011B
LD B,65
LD B,"s"

Double register LD's

As you notice from the register display some registers have
been grouped together. For example the H and L registers are
displayed together as HL. You can treat these pairs as if they
were one

LD HL,1000 returns

```
A  CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
00 000000 0000 0000 03E8 0000 0000 00 000000  0000 0000 0000 0000
```

We can alse transfer this data from one double register pair to
another

LD BC,HL gives

```
A  CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
00 000000 03E8 0000 03E8 0000 0000 00 000000  0000 0000 0000 0000
```

The double registers can be any one of BC DE HL IX IY or SP.

Transfers to and from memory

The above instructions all transfer data within the
microprocessor. The following sequence transfers a data to the
memory (Use F1 or write as a program and then type F5)

LD A,255:LD HL,1000:LD,(HL) A

Here we are using more than one statement in a line. The
first two statements load the registers as we have seen before.
The last statement loads memory location 1000 with 255. To
retrieve this data we can use

LD D,(HL)

which transfers 255 from the memory to register D.

To see what is in the memory at any one time use the view
memory command.

In general the memory location is usually given by the HL
register pair. The BC and DE regsters can be used as the memory
location but the data can only be transferred to and from
register A eg LD (BC),A is allowed but LD B,(DE) is not.

A second way to transfer data to and from memory is to use a
number instead of a register pair. Thus

LD E,(38C1H) transfers to register E the data in memory 1000
LD (HL),34 transfers to the location stored in HL the no 34

A third way is to use the IX and IY registers. Say for example we
want to store the word HELLO in memory. First we would look up
the ASCII values for the letters, which are 72 69 76 76 79. We
will store the word starting at memory location 500. First we
load IX or IY with 500

LD IX,500

Next the data is transferred

LD (IX),72:LD (IX+1),69:LD (IX+2),76:LD (IX+3),76:LD (IX+4),79

Use the view memory command to see where this data is.

The final way LD can be used is to transfer double registers to
and from memory. For example

LD (500),BC

transfers the contents of C to the memory location 500 and the
contents of B to location 501. We can load this data from memory
to register pair DE with a

LD DE,(500)

The register can be BC DE HL IX IY or SP.

What follows now is a list of all the possible LD instructions
sorted alphabetically. The letter n is used to indicate a number
between 0 and 255 (0 and 0FFH). nn represents a number between 0
and 65535 (0 and 0FFFFH). d is any number between -127 and +127
(the +d can be -d; LD (IX-23) A

```
LD (BC),A        LD B,(HL)        LD H,(IX+d)
LD (DE),A        LD B,(IX+d)      LD H,(IY+d)
LD (HL),A        LD B,(IY+d)      LD H,A
LD (HL),B        LD B,A           LD H,B
LD (HL),C        LD B,B           LD H,C
LD (HL),D        LD B,C           LD H,D
LD (HL),E        LD B,D           LD H,E
LD (HL),H        LD B,E           LD H,H
```

```
LD (HL),L        LD B,H          LD H,L
LD (HL),n        LD B,L          LD H,n
LD (IX+d),A      LD B,n          LD HL,(nn)
LD (IX+d),B      LD BC,(nn)      LD HL,nn
LD (IX+d),C      LD BC,nn        LD I,A
LD (IX+d),D      LD C,(HL)       LD IX,(nn)
LD (IX+d),E      LD C,(IX+d)     LD IX,nn
LD (IX+d),H      LD C,(IY+d)     LD IY,(nn)
LD (IX+d),L      LD C,A          LD IY,nn
LD (IX+d),n      LD C,B          LD L,(HL)
LD (IY+d),A      LD C,C          LD L,(IX+d)
LD (IY+d),B      LD C,D          LD L,(IY+d)
LD (IY+d),C      LD C,E          LD L,A
LD (IY+d),D      LD C,H          LD L,B
LD (IY+d),E      LD C,L          LD L,C
LD (IY+d),H      LD C,n          LD L,D
LD (IY+d),L      LD D,(HL)       LD L,E
LD (IY+d),n      LD D,(IX+d)     LD L,H
LD (nn),A        LD D,(IY+d)     LD L,L
LD (nn),BC       LD D,A          LD L,n
LD (nn),DE       LD D,B          LD R,A
LD (nn),HL       LD D,C          LD SP,(nn)
LD (nn),IX       LD D,D          LD SP,HL
LD (nn),IY       LD D,E          LD SP,IX
LD (nn),SP       LD D,H          LD SP,IY
LD A,(BC)        LD D,L          LD SP,nn
LD A,(DE)        LD D,n
LD A,(HL)        LD DE,(nn)
LD A,(IX+d)      LD DE,nn
LD A,(IY+d)      LD E,(HL)
LD A,(nn)        LD E,(IX+d)
LD A,A           LD E,(IY+d)
LD A,B           LD E,A
LD A,C           LD E,B
LD A,D           LD E,C
LD A,E           LD E,D
LD A,H           LD E,E
LD A,L           LD E,H
LD A,n           LD E,L
LD A,R           LD E,n
LD A,I           LD H,(HL)
```

****

CHAPTER 2 The EX instructions

     In addition to the registers we have mentioned so far the
Z80 has several additional registers. The most important of these
are the so called prime registers, which are designated A' BC'
DE' and HL'. You cannot access these registers directly, but you
can swap them with the ordinary registers. If you type in the
following code

LD BC,1234H:LD DE,5678H:LD HL,9ABCH the registers will appear

```
A  CZPSNH  BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
00 000000 1234 5678 9ABC 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000
```

Now type in

EXX   which swaps BC DE and HL with the prime registers

```
A CZPSNH  BC   DE   HL   IX   IY  A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 1234 5678 9ABC 0000
```

You can now work on the normal registers, eg

LD BC,1111H

When you want to swap the registers back again use EXX

The EXX statement is very useful for storing variables you are
working on without having to save them in memory. The equivalent
store to memory for these three registers would take 3 LD
statements.

Other EX commands

Several other commands exist that swap registers.

EX AF,AF'

swaps the A register and the flags with the corresponding prime
registers. It is commonly used with EXX.

EX DE,HL

swaps the DE register and the HL register.

EX (SP),HL
EX (SP),IX
EX (SP),IY

all swap the memory contents pointed to by the SP register with
the corresponding register. The equivalent code for EX
(SP),HL could be

LD HL,1234H:LD BC,5678H:LD (1000H),BC:LD SP,1000H then
LD BC,(1000H):LD (1000H),HL:LD HL,BC

Thus in the case of EX (SP),HL the L register is swapped with the
data at the memory location pointed to by the SP register, and
the H register is swapped with the memory location + 1 pointed to
by the SP register. Type MEMORY to check this.

Exchange Commands

```
EXX                          EX (SP),HL
EX AF,AF'                     EX (SP),IX
EX DE,HL                      EX (SP),IY
```

****

                    Chapter 3 The Stack

The memory of a computer can be thought of as a library, with each book representing a memory location. LD BC,(350) is like finding the 350th book. The stack on the other hand is like a pile of books. Instead of storing the BC register in memory location 350 and then retrieving it later we can put it on top of a pile of books, and take it off later.

The following code shows how the stack works

LD BC,1234:LD SP,504H initialises the registers

PUSH BC   takes the BC register and puts it on top of the pile of books.

LD BC,0 clears the BC register, and

POP BC   takes the top book and puts it back in the BC register.

If you now view the memory you can see what has happened. The SP register was used as a pointer as to where the top of the pile of books was. Thus after PUSH BC, 503H contains 12 or the H register, and 502 contains 34 or the L register. The SP was 502. POP BC put 502 into the L register and 503 into the H register, and added 2 to SP to make 504 again.

In fact the data in 502 and 503 could have been POP ed into any register. Try the dollowing to confirm this

PUSH BC:POP DE

Because memory locations are used to store data you have to set where you wnat the stack to be before using PUSH and POP. The stack was in this case set at 504 but could have been any location. The instruction LD SP,504 should occur before any PUSH or POP instructions are used and so usually appears near the beginning of a program. Most programs would use a maximum of 20 PUSH's before POP's so you need to make sure that about 40 memory locations below the initial value of the SP are not used. The ORG instruction is used to reserve this memory.

The PUSH and POP instruction both work on double register pairs only. Thus for the purposes of this instruction the A register and the flag register are grouped together as an AF register, with the F register being the least significant byte. The way the individual flags are grouped in the F register is discussed in the chapter on the flags.

The stack commands

PUSH AF   POP AF
PUSH BC   POP BC
PUSH DE   POP DE

```
PUSH HL                    POP HL
PUSH IX                    POP IX
PUSH IY                    POP IY
```

****

Chapter 4 Arithmetic

Arithmetic in machine code is a little different to arithmetic in a higher level language such as BASIC or FORTRAN. Registers can be added, subtracted, but multiplication and division require a short program. Other instructions exist to compare two numbers and increment or decrement registers.

When two numbers are added or subtracted there needs to be a way of signalling a carry or borrow if this has occurred. In addition to a carry five other features of the operation, such as = to zero and negative or positive are signalled. This is done using the flags, which are shown in the register display as CZPSNH. The six flags are covered briefly below and are covered in more detail in the chapter on the flags and on number basses.

The C or carry flag is set if the result of an add is too great for the register to hold the value. In subtraction it is set if the answer is less than 0, necessitating a borrow.

The Z or Zero flag, which is set to 1 if the result is zero, and reset to 0 if the result is not zero.

The P flag is set when the parity is odd, and reset when it is even. It is also used by some instructions to signify overflow, and thus is sometimes written as the P/V flag.

The S or Sign flag, which is set to 1 if the result of an operation is between 0 and 127, and reset to 0 if between 128 and 255.

The H or half carry flag, which is used when converting hex values to BCD. The N flag indicates whether the last instruction was an add or subtract. These flags are used by the DAA instruction.

Adding

The following code shows how to add two numbers.

LD A,5:ADD A,3   will produce

```
A  CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE'  HL'  SP
08 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000
```

if you now type ADD A,255 then the result will be

```
A  CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE'  HL'  SP
07 100001 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000
```

The carry flag has been set to indicate that the answer was

greater than 255.

If you now use ADD A,248 then the answer will be 0, and the Z
flag will be set.

The 8 bit instructions all add either a number, or another
register to the A register. The flags are set on the result
contained in the A register as follows.

```
C or carry flag         1 if answer >255 else 0
Z or zero flag          1 if answer = 0 else 0
P flag                  1 if overflow in twos complement else 0
S or sign flag          1 if 127<answer<256 else 0
N flag                  0
H or half carry flag    1 if carry from bit 3 to bit 4 else 0
```

16 bit arithmetic

If you want to add numbers that are more than the 0-255 that can
be stored in the A register, then the HL, IX or IY registers can
be used. Thus LD HL,1000H:LD BC,2000H:ADD HL,BC will give

```
A  CZPSNH  BC    DE    HL    IX    IY   A' CZPSNH' BC'   DE'   HL'   SP
00 000000  2000  0000  3000  0000  0000 00 000000  0000  0000  0000  0000
```

The flags are set as follows.

```
C or carry flag         1 if answer >65535 else 0
Z or zero flag          not changed
P flag                  not changed
S or sign flag          not changed
N flag                  0
H or half carry flag    1 if carry from bit 11 to bit 12 else 0
```

8 bit and 16 bit ADD instructions

```
ADD A,A        ADD A,(HL)       ADD HL,BC       ADD IY,BC
ADD A,B        ADD A,(IX+d)     ADD HL,DE       ADD IY,DE
ADD A,C        ADD A,(IY+d)     ADD HL,HL       ADD IY,IY
ADD A,D                         ADD HL,SP       ADD IY,SP
ADD A,E                         ADD IX,BC
ADD A,H                         ADD IX,DE
ADD A,L                         ADD IX,IX
ADD A,n                         ADD IX,SP
```

Add with carry

8 bit group

This set of instructions are essentially the same as the ADD set,
but add the carry flag as well. The instruction is ADC instead of
ADD. Thus LD A 4:ADC A 3 would give an answer of 7 if the carry
flag was 0, but an answer of 8 if the carry flag was 1 before the
instruction.

The ADC instruction allows multiple precision adding. The least
most significant bytes are added, and the carry is propogated to
the next most significant bytes by using ADC.

For the 8 bit ADC's using th A register the flags are affected

```
C or carry flag          1 if answer >255 else 0
Z or zero flag           1 if result = 0 else 0
P flag                   1 if TC <-128 or >127 else 0
S or sign flag           1 if 127 < n < 256 else 0
N flag                   0
H or half carry flag     1 if carry from bit 3 to bit 4 else 0
```

                     8 bit ADC instructions

```
ADC A,A         ADC A,B         ADC A,C         ADC A,D
ADC A,E         ADC A,H         ADC A,L         ADC A,n
ADC A,(HL)      ADC A,(IX+d)    ADC A,(IY+d)
```

                       16 bit ADC group

The 16 bit ADC instructions use the HL register instead of the A
register. The flags are affected as follows

```
C or carry flag          1 if answer >65536 else 0
Z or zero flag           1 if result = 0 else 0
P flag                   1 if TC <-32768 or >32767 else 0
S or sign flag           1 if 32767 < n < 65536 else 0
N flag                   0
H or half carry flag     1 if carry from bit 11 else 0
```

                       16 bit ADC group

```
ADC HL,BC       ADC HL,DE       ADC HL,HL       ADC HL,SP
```


                         Subtracting

                       The SUB group

There are two subtraction instructions, SUB which is the opposite
of ADD, and SBC which is subtract with borrow. Thus

LD A,6:SUB 2 gives A = 4.

SUB is used for 8 bit subtractions. The number or register is
subtracted from the A register and the result stored in the A
register. One of the idiosyncracities of the Z80 instrcution set
is that the A register is not written as it is with ADD, viz ADD
A C but SUB C. In addition although there are 16 bit ADD's there
are no 16 bit SUB's. (16 bit subtraction is done using the SBC
instruction.) The flags are set as follows

```
C or carry flag          1 if answer <0 else 0
Z or zero flag           1 if answer = 0 else 0
P flag                   1 if overflow in twos complement else 0
S or sign flag           1 if 127<answer<256 else 0
```

```
N flag                    1
H or half carry flag      1 if borrow from bit 4 else 0
```

SUB instruction set

```
SUB A        SUB B        SUB C        SUB D        SUB E        SUB H
SUB L        SUB n        SUB (HL)     SUB (IX+d)   SUB (IY+d)
```

Subtract with borrow

8 bit group

The SBC instruction group is the opposite to the ADC group. The
register or number is subvtracted from the A register, along with
the C flag, and the result stored in the A register. Thus

LD A,7:SBC A,3 gives A=4 if the carry flag was 0 and A=3 if it
was 1 before the SBC.

The flags are affected as follows

```
C or carry flag           1 if <0 else 0
Z or zero flag            1 if result = 0 else 0
P flag                    1 if TC >127 or <-128 else 0
S or sign flag            1 if 127 < n <256 else 0
N flag                    1
H or half carry flag      1 if borrow from bit 12 else 0
```

```
SBC A,A        SBC A,B        SBC A,C        SBC A,D
SBC A,E        SBC A,H        SBC A,L        SBC A,n
SBC A,(HL)     SBC A,(IX+d)   SBC A,(IY+d)
```

16 bit subtracts with borrow

These instructions subtract the designated register from the HL
register pair and store the answer in the HL register pair. The
flags are affected as follows

```
C or carry flag           1 if answer < 0 else 0
Z or zero flag            1 if result = 0 else 0
P flag                    1 if TC >32767 or <-32768 else 0
S or sign flag            1 if 32767 < n < 65536 else 0
N flag                    1
H or half carry flag      1 if borrow from bit 12 else 0
```

16 bit SBC group

```
SBC HL,BC      SBC HL,DE      SBC HL,HL      SBC HL,SP
```

Compares

The compare instruction can be thought of as an 8 bit SUB
instruction in the way the flags are changed, except that the
contents of the A register remain unchanged. Thus
```

```
LD A,9:CP 9  gives

A CZPSNH  BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
09 010010 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

where  for  example the zero flag has been set because 9  - 9  is
zero,  but the A register still contains the original 9.  The set
is

CP A      CP B      CP C      CP D      CP E       CP H
CP L      CP n      CP (HL)   CP (IX+d)  CP (IY+d)
```

                              Increment

```
Increments are the same as adding a 1.  Thus INC B is the same as
LD A,B:ADD A,1:LD B,A.  The results of all increments to  single
registers  affect  the  flags  as if an ADD  had  been  perfomed.
However for double register groups,  such as INC BC the registers
are  unaffected.  The first two columns are the 8 bit  increments
that  do  affect the flags,  and the last column is  the  16  bit
increments that leave the flags unchanged.


INC A      INC (HL)             INC BC
INC B      INC (IX+d)           INC DE
INC C      INC (IY+d)           INC HL
INC D                           INC IX
INC E                           INC IY
INC H                           INC SP
INC L
```

                              Decrement

```
These  are the opposite to the increment group,  the  subtract  1
from  the  register  in  question.  As before  single  register
decrements  affect  the  flags as a subtract  would,  but  double
register decrements leave the flags as they are.


DEC A      DEC (HL)             DEC BC
DEC B      DEC (IX+d)           DEC DE
DEC C      DEC (IY+d)           DEC HL
DEC D                           DEC IX
DEC E                           DEC IY
DEC H                           DEC SP
DEC L


****************************************************************
```

                    Chapter 5 Jumps Calls and Returns

```
     There  are  five instructions in this group.  JP and JR  are
like GOTO in basic,  and jump to the corresponding line.  CALL is
like  GOSUB,  and  calls  a  subroutine.  RET returns  from  the
subroutine.
```

Jumps

The simplest type of jump is demonstrated by the following short
program.

```
Line1:  LD A,5:JP Line 3
Line2:  end
line3:  LD B,6:END
```

Line2 is never encountered because the program jumps to Line3.

The next type of jump only occurs if the flag condition specified
by the jump is true.

```
Line1:  LD A,0:LD B,5
Line2:  ADD A,1:DEC B:JP NZ Line2
        END
```

Line1 loads B with 5. The program now loops through line2
until B is equal to 0. This is because JP NZ only jumps if the
result of the last operation to affect the Z flag was not zero.
Since the zero flag is set to 0 by DEC B if B is not equal to 0
the program loops until B=0.

The following are the conditions that can be used with JP.

```
NZ        Jump if zero flag = 0. (last Z flag instr <>0)
Z         Jump if zero flag = 1. (last Z flag instr = 0)
NC        Jump if carry flag = 0. (last C instr = no carry)
C         Jump if carry flag = 1. (last C instr = carry)
PO        Jump if parity odd, parity flag = 0.
PE        Jump if parity even, parity flag = 1.
P         Jump if sign positive, sign flag = 0.
M         Jump if sign negative (minus), sign flag = 1.
```

Relative jumps

     In the interpreter the JR instruction is the same as the JP
instruction. However there is a difference between the two in the
compiled program. The JR instruction, instead of storing the
value of the location to be jumped to, instead stores a
displacement value, which may be anything between +127 and -127.
A displacement value of say -3 says jump to the instruction 3
bytes before this one.

     The reasoning behind this is that relative jumps take only
two bytes of memory wheras ordinary jumps take three. However
this memory saving is offset by the fact that ordinary jumps are
quicker than relative jumps. In addition conditional jumps PO PE
P and M are not allowed with JR.

     All this means that in practical terms it is probably better
to ignore the JR instruction and to only use the JP instuction.

DJNZ

The third type of jump is the DJNZ instruction. The following

program shows how it works.

```
Line1:  LD A,0:LD B,5
Line2:  ADD A,1:DJNZ Line2
        END
```

Line1 sets A to 0 and B to 5. Line2 adds one to A. The DJNZ subtracts one from register B, and if the result is not zero jumps to the location shown. Thus the program loops through 20 until B is 0, and then ends.

Summary of Jump instructions

```
JP nn           JP Z,nn           JP PE,nn          JR NZ,nn
JP (HL)         JP NC,nn          JP P,nn           JR Z,nn
JP (IX)         JP C,nn           JP M,nn           JR NC,nn
JP (IY)         JP PO,nn          JR nn             JR C,nn
JP NZ,nn                                            DJNZ nn
```

Calls

Subroutines are called by a CALL and terminated by a RET.

```
Start:  LD A,5:CALL Subroutine
        END

Subroutine:LD B,4:ADD A,B:RET
```

The return location is stored in the stack.

CALL's like jumps can be conditional, and the same rules apply. RET's can also be conditional.

     In addition there are two additional returns, RETI and RETN, which return from interupts and non maskable interrupts respectively. Since interrupts are not implemented on the interpreter these two instructions do nothing. They can be included if they will be used in the final compiled program.

Summary

```
CALL nn                 RET nn
CALL NZ,nn              RET NZ,nn
CALL Z,nn               RET Z,nn
CALL NC,nn              RET NC,nn
CALL C,nn               RET C,nn
CALL PO,nn              RET PO,nn
CALL PE,nn              RET PE,nn
CALL P,nn               RET P,nn
CALL M,nn               RET M,nn
                        RETI
                        RETN
```

****

Chapter 6 AND OR and XOR

These instructions all work on the A register and peform bit by
bit comparisons with the appropriate register. For example

LD A,1010000B:LD B,0000001B:OR B gives

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY A' CZPSNH' BC'   DE'   HL'   SP
A1 000100 0100 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

AND OR and XOR perform bit by bit comparisons of the designated
register and the A register according to the following rules.

            A register bit   other register bit   A bit set to

AND   0   0   0
                0   1   0
                1   0   0
                1   1   1

OR   0   0   0
                0   1   1
                1   0   1
                1   1   1

XOR   0   0   0
                0   1   1
                1   0   1
                1   1   0

The flags are also set by the result in the A register, the
details of which are in Ch 17. Note that the AND command affects
the H flag differently to the other two, however all the other
flags are affected the same way.

                        Instruction set

(n is any number or label that can be resolved into an 8 bit
number)

AND A   OR A   XOR A
AND B   OR B   XOR B
AND C   OR C   XOR C
AND D   OR D   XOR D
AND E   OR E   XOR E
AND H   OR H   XOR H
AND L   OR L   XOR L
AND n   OR n   XOR n

****

                Chapter 7 Bit set, reset and test

    The instructions in this group allow a specific bit in a
register or memory location to be set to 1, reset to 0 or tested
to see if it is 1 or 0.

SET

LD C,0:SET 3,C

sets byte 3 of register 3 to 1. The result is register C = 8 in
hexadecimal.

The following table shows how the bits are numbered in a byte.

                         01010101
                         76543210

Bit 7 on the left is the most significant bit and bit 0 on the
right is the least significant. For 16 bit numbers bit 15 is on
the left and bit 0 is on the right.

The registers that can be set, reset or tested are

A   B C D E H L and the memory location pointed to by (HL)
(IX+d) or (IY+d).

                              RES

The RES instruction is the opposite of the SET instruction, it
changes the appropriate bit to 0. Thus

LD H,11111111B:RES 5,H

results in a value of 0DFH

Flags are not affected by either the SET or RES instructions.

                              BIT

The BIT instruction is used to test whether a specific bit is a
zero or a one.

LD D,10101010B:BIT 5,D results in

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY A' CZPSNH' BC' DE' HL' SP
00 000001 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

The flags, which indicate the result of the test, are set as
follows.

C or carry flag   not affected
Z or zero flag   1 if bit is zero else 0
P or parity/overflow   may be anything
S or sign flag   may be anything
N or subtract flag   0
H or half carry flag   1

                    Summary of instructions

SET 0,A   SET 4,A   RES 0,A   RES 4,A   BIT 0,A   BIT
4,A

```
SET 0,B       SET 4,B       RES 0,B       RES 4,B       BIT 0,B       BIT
4,B
SET 0,C       SET 4,C       RES 0,C       RES 4,C       BIT 0,C       BIT
4,C
SET 0,D       SET 4,D       RES 0,D       RES 4,D       BIT 0,D       BIT
4,D
SET 0,E       SET 4,E       RES 0,E       RES 4,E       BIT 0,E       BIT
4,E
SET 0,H       SET 4,H       RES 0,H       RES 4,H       BIT 0,H       BIT
4,H
SET 0,L       SET 4,L       RES 0,L       RES 4,L       BIT 0,L       BIT
4,L
SET 0,(HL)    SET 4,(HL)    RES 0,(HL)    RES 4,(HL)    BIT 0,(HL)    BIT
4,(HL)
SET 0,(IX+d) SET 4,(IX+d) RES 0,(IX+d) RES 4,(IX+d) BIT 0,(IX+d) BIT
4,(IX+d)
SET 0,(IY+d) SET 4,(IY+d) RES 0,(IY+d) RES 4,(IY+d) BIT 0,(IY+d) BIT
4,(IY+d)
SET 1,A       SET 5,A       RES 1,A       RES 5,A       BIT 1,A       BIT
5,A
SET 1,B       SET 5,B       RES 1,B       RES 5,B       BIT 1,B       BIT
5,B
SET 1,C       SET 5,C       RES 1,C       RES 5,C       BIT 1,C       BIT
5,C
SET 1,D       SET 5,D       RES 1,D       RES 5,D       BIT 1,D       BIT
5,D
SET 1,E       SET 5,E       RES 1,E       RES 5,E       BIT 1,E       BIT
5,E
SET 1,H       SET 5,H       RES 1,H       RES 5,H       BIT 1,H       BIT
5,H
SET 1,L       SET 5,L       RES 1,L       RES 5,L       BIT 1,L       BIT
5,L
SET 1,(HL)    SET 5,(HL)    RES 1,(HL)    RES 5,(HL)    BIT 1,(HL)    BIT
5,(HL)
SET 1,(IX+d) SET 5,(IX+d) RES 1,(IX+d) RES 5,(IX+d) BIT 1,(IX+d) BIT
5,(IX+d)
SET 1,(IY+d) SET 5,(IY+d) RES 1,(IY+d) RES 5,(IY+d) BIT 1,(IY+d) BIT
5,(IY+d)
SET 2,A       SET 6,A       RES 2,A       RES 6,A       BIT 2,A       BIT
6,A
SET 2,B       SET 6,B       RES 2,B       RES 6,B       BIT 2,B       BIT
6,B
SET 2,C       SET 6,C       RES 2,C       RES 6,C       BIT 2,C       BIT
6,C
SET 2,D       SET 6,D       RES 2,D       RES 6,D       BIT 2,D       BIT
6,D
SET 2,E       SET 6,E       RES 2,E       RES 6,E       BIT 2,E       BIT
6,E
SET 2,H       SET 6,H       RES 2,H       RES 6,H       BIT 2,H       BIT
6,H
SET 2,L       SET 6,L       RES 2,L       RES 6,L       BIT 2,L       BIT
6,L
SET 2,(HL)    SET 6,(HL)    RES 2,(HL)    RES 6,(HL)    BIT 2,(HL)    BIT
6,(HL)
SET 2,(IX+d) SET 6,(IX+d) RES 2,(IX+d) RES 6,(IX+d) BIT 2,(IX+d) BIT
6,(IX+d)
```

```
SET 2,(IY+d) SET 6,(IY+d) RES 2,(IY+d) RES 6,(IY+d) BIT 2,(IY+d) BIT
6,(IY+d)
SET 3,A      SET 7,A      RES 3,A      RES 7,A      BIT 3,A      BIT
7,A
SET 3,B      SET 7,B      RES 3,B      RES 7,B      BIT 3,B      BIT
7,B
SET 3,C      SET 7,C      RES 3,C      RES 7,C      BIT 3,C      BIT
7,C
SET 3,D      SET 7,D      RES 3,D      RES 7,D      BIT 3,D      BIT
7,D
SET 3,E      SET 7,E      RES 3,E      RES 7,E      BIT 3,E      BIT
7,E
SET 3,H      SET 7,H      RES 3,H      RES 7,H      BIT 3,H      BIT
7,H
SET 3,L      SET 7,L      RES 3,L      RES 7,L      BIT 3,L      BIT
7,L
SET 3,(HL)   SET 7,(HL)   RES 3,(HL)   RES 7,(HL)   BIT 3,(HL)   BIT
7,(HL)
SET 3,(IX+d) SET 7,(IX+d) RES 3,(IX+d) RES 7,(IX+d) BIT 3,(IX+d) BIT
7,(IX+d)
SET 3,(IY+d) SET 7,(IY+d) RES 3,(IY+d) RES 7,(IY+d) BIT 3,(IY+d) BIT
7,(IY+d)
```

****

Chapter 8 Rotate and shift group

The instructions in this chapter are concerned with shifting or
rotating the bits in a particular register. For example

10001000   shifted right becomes 01000100

Rotate group

There are four instructions that rotate the contents of the A
register only.

RLCA

RLCA rotates the A register to the left one place. The 7th bit is
put back into the 0 position. The 7th bit also goes to the carry
flag.

LD A,10011000B:RLCA gives

```
A  CZPSNH  BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
31 100000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000
```

Use View Registers to see the value of A in binary= 00110001B

The flags are affected as follows

```
C or carry flag          previous bit 7 value
Z or zero flag           not affected
P or parity/overflow     not affected
```

```
S or sign flag              not affected
N or subtract flag      0
H or half carry flag    0
```

The RLCA instruction can be represented symbolically as

```
C  <---    bbbbbbbb <-
        |             |
         ------------
```

RLA

The RLA instruction rotates left through the carry flag.

```
 --- C <---  bbbbbbbb  <--
|                         |
------------ > ----------
```

The bits in the register are all rotated left, the 7th bit goes
to the carry flag and the carry flag goes to bit 0.

LD A,1 then

RLA 9 times, looking at the value of A each time will clarify the
operation of this instruction.

Apart from the carry flag, the other flags are set as for RLCA.

RRCA

This rotates the register right in a similar way to RLCA.
Symbolically

```
 ---> bbbbbbbb ---> C
|             |
 ------ < -----
```

The register is shifted right by one, and the 0 bit goes to the
carry flag and to the 7th bit. Flags apart from the carry are as
for RLCA.

RRA

The RRA rotates right through the carry flag

```
 ---> bbbbbbbb ---> C --
|                      |
 ----------- < ---------
```

The register is shifted right by one, the 0 bit goes to the carry
flag, and the carry flag goes to bit 7. Flags apart from the
carry flag are as for RLCA.

              Rotates through other registers

The next set of instructions are similar to the above, but act on
any one of A B C D E H L (HL) (IX+d) or (IY+d). They also affect
the flags differenty.

                              RLC x

The RLC instruction rotates the register left by one. It can be
represented symbolically as

C <---   bbbbbbbb <-
        | |

To demonstrate this instruction type

LD D,1 and then

RLC D   until the 1 has gone all the way round.

The flags are affected as follows

C or carry flag   previous bit 7 value
Z or zero flag   1 if result is zero, else 0
P or parity/overflow   1 if parity even, else 0
S or sign flag   1 if 127<result<256, else 0
N or subtract flag   0
H or half carry flag   0

                              RL x

The RL instruction rotates the register through the carry flag.

              --- C <--- bbbbbbbb <--
             | |
              ------------ > ----------

The register is rotated left by one, the 7th bit goes to the
carry flag, and the carry flag goes to the 0 bit. Flags apart
from the carry flag are as for RLC. RL works on the same
registers as RLC.

                             RRC x

The RRC instruction rotates the register right.

              ---> bbbbbbbb ---> C
             | |
              ------ < -----

The register is rotated right by one, the 0 bit goes to bothe the
carry flag and the 7th bit. Flags apart from the carry flag are
as for RLC. RRC works on the same registers as RLC.

                             RR x

The RR instruction rotates the register right through the carry
flag.

```
                    ---> bbbbbbbb ---> C --
                    |                       |
                    ---------- < ---------
```

The register is rotated right by one, the 0 bit goes to the carry
flag and the carry flag goes to the 7th bit.

                        The four bit rotate group

There are two instructions in this group that rotate groups of
bits through the A register and a memory location pointed to by
the (HL) register.

                                RLD

The RLD instruction takes groups of four bits and rotates them
as shown symbolically.

```
 ----->-----                     -------->----------
12 ---<--- 34          or     1    2 -----<---- 3 <-- 4
          ^|
           -
A          (HL)                   A                 (HL)
```

     The register on the left is the A register and the register
on the right is a memory location pointed to by the HL register.
The 4 least significant bits of the A register are moved to the 4
least significant bits of the (HL) location. The 4 least
significant bits of the (HL) location are moved to the 4 most
significant bits of the (HL) location. The 4 most significant
bits of the (HL) location are moved to the 4 least significant
bits of the A register. The 4 most significant bits of the A
register remain unchanged.

LD A,12H:LD HL,1000H:LD (HL),34H sets up the registers as shown
above.

RLD   results in

```
A  CZPSNH  BC   DE   HL   IX   IY  A' CZPSNH' BC'  DE'  HL'  SP
13 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000
```

with View Memory giving address 1000H = to 42H.

     The flags are set as follows

```
C or carry flag            not affected
Z or zero flag             1 if result is zero, else 0
P or parity/overflow       1 if parity even, else 0
S or sign flag             1 if 127<result<256, else 0
N or subtract flag         0
H or half carry flag       0
```

RRD

The RRD instruction can be represented as follows.

                    ---------<--------------
           1   2 ------->----- 3 -->-- 4
                 A   (HL)

The instruction does the reverse of RLD. The flags are as for
RLD.

                        The Shift group

There are three instructions in this group, that can work on the
following registers; A B C D E H L (HL) (IX+d) or (IY+d).

                            SLA x

This   instruction   shifts   the   designated   register   left.
Symbolically

                  C <--- bbbbbbbb <--- 0

The register is shifted left one place. The 7th bit goes to the
carry flag. The 0 bit has a 0 shifted in.

LD E,1 and then SLA E,9 times will demonstrate this instruction.

Flags are set as follows

C or carry flag   from bit 7
Z or zero flag   1 if result is zero, else 0
P or parity/overflow   1 if parity even, else 0
S or sign flag   1 if 127<result<256, else 0
N or subtract flag   0
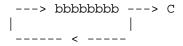H or half carry flag   0

                            SRA x

This instruction shifts the designated register right one place.
Symbolically

                  --> bbbbbbbb ----> C
                  -<--

The bits are all shifted right one. The 0 bit goes to the carry
flag. The 7th bit however stays the same, although the 6th bit
equals the old 7th bit. The flags apart from the carry flag are
as for SLA.

LD C 10000000B and then SRA C 9 times will demonstrate this.

SRL x

This instruction shifts all the bits right. Symbolically

                   0 ---> bbbbbbbb --->C

The bits are all shifted right one. The 0 bit goes to the carry
flag. The 7th bit is replaced with a 0. Flags are as for SLA.

                   Summary of rotate and shift group

RLCA   RL A   RR A   SRA A
RLA   RL B   RR B   SRA B
RRCA   RL C   RR C   SRA C
RRA   RL D   RR D   SRA D
RLD   RL E   RR E   SRA E
RRD   RL H   RR H   SRA H
RLC A   RL L   RR L   SRA L
RLC B   RL (HL)   RR (HL)   SRA (HL)
RLC C   RL (IX+d)   RR (IX+d)   SRA (IX+d)
RLC D   RL (IY+d)   RR (IY+d)   SRA (IY+d)
RLC E   RRC A   SLA A   SRL A
RLC H   RRC B   SLA B   SRL B
RLC L   RRC C   SLA C   SRL C
RLC (HL)   RRC D   SLA D   SRL D
RLC (IX+d)   RRC E   SLA E   SRL E
RLC (IY+d)   RRC H   SLA H   SRL H
               RRC L   SLA L   SRL L
               RRC (HL)   SLA (HL)   SRL (HL)
               RRC (IX+d)   SLA (IX+d)   SRL (IX+d)
               RRC (IY+d)   SLA (IY+d)   SRL (IY+d)

   ****

                            Chapter 9

          General purpose arithmetic and CPU control group

                              NOP

This is the simplest Z80 instruction, and simply does nothing.

        NOP:NOP:NOP:END

NOP's are useful for creating delays.

                              HALT

This instruction halts the CPU. In the interpreter this returns
control to programmer, and is equivalent to STOP in BASIC.
In the microprosessor this stops program
execution until an interrupt is recieved. The Z80 performs NOP's
to ensure proper memory refresh.

DI

DI disables the interrupts. Since interrupts are not supported by
the interpreter the interpreter ignores this instruction. To find
out more about how the various types of interrupts work on the
Z80 consult one of the Z80 texts.

        LD A,4:DI:LD B,3:EI:END

                                EI

EI enables the interrupts. See DI

                               IM n

This instruction sets the interrupt mode. As with EI it is
ignored by the interpreter. n can be one of 0 1 or 2. Thus

        IM 2:LD A,5:IM 0:END

                               SCF

SCF sets the carry flag to 1.

        LD A 5:SCF:END gives

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE' HL' SP
05 100000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

The Z, P and S flags are unaffected. The N and H flags are reset
to 0.

To set the carry flag to 0 use SCF then CCF.

                               CCF

CCF complements the carry flag. If the flag was 1 it is now 0 and
vice versa. The Z P and S flags are unaffected. The N flag is
reset to 0. The H flag may be anything.

                               NEG

NEG negates the A register. The mathematical equivalent is
A = 0-A. Thus

LD A,5:NEG gives

A CZPSNH BC   DE   HL   IX   IY   A' CZPSNH' BC' DE' HL' SP
FB 000111 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 00 000000 0000 0000 0000 0000

Flags are set as follows

C or carry flag   1 if A=0 before operation, else 0
Z or zero flag   1 if result is zero, else 0
P or parity/overflow   1 if A=128 before operation, else 0

```
S or sign flag          1 if 127<result<256, else 0
N or subtract flag      1 if borrow from bit 4 else 0
H or half carry flag    1
```

                              CPL

CPL complements the A register. All 0's become 1's and all 1's
0's. The C, Z P and S flags are all unaffected. The N and H flags
are both set to 1.

                              DAA

DAA decimally adjusts the accumulator. This instruction allows
decimal numbers to be added. For example let us add 11H and 22H

LD A,11H:ADD A,22H which gives A = 33H

However if we add 22H and 39H

LD A,22H:ADD A,39H we get A = 5BH

The B is illegal in decimal, or BCD, and is corrected by using
DAA. Thus

LD A 22H:ADD A 39H:DAA gives A = 61H, which is correct.

Other examples

LD A,91H:ADD A,92H unadjusted gives 23H, adjusted with DAA gives
83H and carry = 1 (use to get 183)

LD A,99H:ADD A,99H unadjusted gives 32H, adjusted with DAA gives
98H and carry = 1.

DAA also can be used after subtraction

LD A,99H:SUB A,11H unadjusted gives 88H, adjusted with DAA gives
88H.

LD A,91H:SUB A,19H unadjusted gives 78H, adjusted with DAA gives
72H.

LD A,19H:SUB A,91H unadjusted gives 88H, adjusted with DAA gives
28H and carry = 1. (carry is used as borrow in subtracts)

LD A,11H:SUB A,99H unadjusted gives 78H, adjusted with DAA gives
12 and carry = 1.

The way DAA works is to selectively add numbers according to the
value in A, and to the C H and N flags. In fact this is the
purpose of the H and N flags as no other instruction uses them.
The value added is given by the following table, although it is
not necessary to understand or even to have the table to use DAA.
DAA should always be used immediately after the ADD or SUB
instruction to avoid flags being changed. DAA can also be used

with ADC INC SBC DEC NEG etc.

N	C	Value of high nibble	H	Value of low nibble	Hex no added	C flag after execution
0	0	0-9	0	0-9	00	0
0	0	0-8	0	A-F	06	0
0	0	0-9	1	0-3	06	0
0	0	A-F	0	0-9	60	1
0	0	9-F	0	A-F	66	1
0	0	A-F	1	0-3	66	1
0	1	0-2	0	0-9	60	1
0	1	0-2	0	A-F	66	1
0	1	0-3	1	0-3	66	1
1	0	0-9	0	0-9	00	0
1	0	0-8	1	6-F	FA	0
1	1	7-F	0	0-9	A0	1
1	1	6-F	1	6-F	9A	1

Flags are affected by DAA as follows

C or carry flag   as per table
Z or zero flag   1 if A=0 else 0
P or parity/overflow   1 if parity even else 0
S or sign flag   1 if msb A = 1 else 0
N or subtract flag   unaffected
H or half carry flag   may be anything

Chapter 11

Block transfer and search group

Four instructions exist in the Z80 instruction set that are used
to transfer blocks of data from one memory location to another.
Another set of four instructions allow searches through a set or
memory locations for a specific byte.

Block transfer group; LDI LDD LDIR LDDR

LDI

LDI moves a block of data. HL is the memory location to move
from, DE is the memory location to move to and BC is the
number of bytes to move.

memory contents (DE) = memory contents (HL)
DE = DE + 1
HL = HL + 1
BC = BC - 1

At the end of each loop the P flag indicates if BC is 0 (P=1
if <>0 and 0 if = to 0)

C, Z and S flags are not affected
H and N flags are reset to 0
P flag =1 if after LDI BC is not equal to 0, else P = 0

LDD

LDD is the same as LDI except that the DE and HL registers are
decremented. Thus

(DE) = (HL)
DE = DE - 1
HL = HL - 1
BC = BC - 1

The flags are the same as for LDI. Thus the program above would
be rewritten

LDIR

This is the automatic version of LDI. Set the HL, DE and BC
registers and then run LDIR. If BC is a high value the
instruction can take a while to execute.

LDIR does the following

(DE) = (HL)
DE = DE + 1
HL = HL + 1
BC = BC - 1 and repeats until BC = 0

Flags are a little different;

C, Z and S unchanged
H, N and P = 0

LDDR

This instruction is the automatic version of LDD. The summary is

(DE) = (HL)
DE = DE - 1
HL = HL - 1
BC = BC - 1 and repeat until BC = 0

Flags are as for LDIR.

The question may be asked; why use LDI when LDIR does the
operation automatically. The reason is that the registers can be
changed when using LDI. For instance you can transfer every
alternate bytethis program transfers every
alternate byte between instructions by inserting say a INC
HL.

                              oooOOOooo

                         Block search group

The next four instructions are concerned with searching for bytes
in a block of data.

CPI

CPI searches starting at the memory location pointed to by the HL
register, and searches for BC number of bytes for the byte
in register A.

A - (HL) and set flags on the result of this compare, equivalent
         to CP (HL)
HL = HL + 1
BC = BC - 1

The flags are set as follows

C = no change
Z = 1 if A - (HL) = 0 else 0
P = 1 if BC <> 0 after instruction else 0
S = 1 if sign A - (HL) negative in two's comp, else 0
H = 1 if a half carry from A - (HL)
N = 1

CPD

CPD is the same as CPI except that the HL register is
decremented; HL = HL - 1. The flags are as for CPI.

CPIR

This is the automatic version of CPI. The instruction repeats
until either A = (HL) or BC = 0. The flags are as for CPI.

CPDR

This is the automatic version of CPD.

Flags are as for CPI.

****

                    Chapter 11 Input and output

The Z80 has several comands that input and output data to the
ports. However many of these are not very useful, and only one
input and one output instruction are used in most Z80 computers.
These are the IN A (n) and OUT (n) A instructions, where n is the
port number between 0 and 255.
Inputs and outputs do nothing on the ZINT interpreter, as
these depend on the actual hardware used.

OTDR   INDR
OTIR   INIR
OUTD   IND
OUTI   INI
OUT (C),A   IN A,(C)
OUT (C),B   IN B,(C)
OUT (C),C   IN C,(C)

```
OUT (C),D                          IN D,(C)
OUT (C),E                          IN E,(C)
OUT (C),H                          IN H,(C)
OUT (C),L                          IN L,(C)
OUT (n),A                          IN A,(n)
```

```
*************************************************************
```


Chapter 12 Addtional commands

Apart from the instructions that generate code, there are
additional commands which are needed to test and run the
programs. These shall be looked at in alphabetical order.

The semicolon ;

The semicolon is used to indicate a remark. These are ignored by
the program.

        LD A,5:; This loads the A register with 5:LD B,3:END

Instructions can be added after the remark, as is the LD B,3.

END

END is used to indicate the end of a program. It should always
be the last statement in a program, otherwise an error message
will appear.

EQU

EQU is used to set labels to particular values.

VARIABLE1 EQU 46H

Later in the program, instead of writing say LD A,46H, we can
write LD A,VARIABLE1. This enables the way the program works to
be made a lot clearer.

The label used, in this case VARIABLE1 can be any sequence of
letters or numbers, but should be 3 or more letters long. Thus
EQU X 5 is not allowed. The number can be decimal, hex or binary
number.

To see what the current values of the labels are the
View Label command is used.

Labels should be assigned values before they are encountered in
the program. The value of a label cannot be changed once it has
been assigned.

ORG

ORG is used to set the origin of the program when it is compiled.
When the program is finally dumped into a Z80 computer's memory,

some way of indicating where the program will start is needed. In
the Z80 it is customary to start the program not in memory
location 0 but at memory location 100H. The first instruction in
the program is a jump to location 100H. This is because the
interrupts jump to locations between 5H and 100H. Thus a standard
way to start a program is

        ORG 0:JP 100H:ORG 100H
        LD A,5 etc...

the interrupts themselves are usually jumps also. Thus the
interrupt at location 66H could be set by

        ORG 66H:JP Interrupt
Interrupt:LD A,5 etc program to service interrupt.

ORG is probably best ignored until you are familiar with the
other instructions, as it is not necessary to write simple
programs.

****

                     Chapter 13 Number Bases

     This chapter explains the number bases that are used by the
interpreter. The appendix contains all the conversions from 0 to
255. For numbers larger than this the BASE command can be used.
The bases to be cavered are binary, hexadecimal and two's
complement.

                             Binary

     Binary is the system of counting used by computers as it
only has two digits, 0 and 1. A number in binary is written with
a B on the end to differentiate it from the other bases; 1011B

                          Hexadecimal

     Hexadecimal or Hex numbers use a base of 16, rather than 10
used in the decimal system. The digits used are 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
9 A B C D E F
     Hex numbers have a H on the end. In addition all H numbers
should start with a number from 0 to 9 to distinguish them from
text. A 0 is usually added to the beginning for this reason. Some
examples of hex numbers are
0D3H   0FFH   012H 0ABCDH 28E6H 0H

                        Two's complement

     Two's complement is a number system that ranges from -128 to
+127. The result of the sum in two's complement is used to set
one of the registers in the Z80; the overflow register. Numbers
from 0 to 127 in decimal are the same in twos complement. However
from 128 to 255 all two's complement numbers are negative.
     TC numbers are calculated by subtracting 256 from the
dicimal number if the decimal number is between 128 and 255

inclusive. Thus 255 is -1 in TC, 128 is -128 and 45 is 45. There
is no special ending to distinguish TC numbers, the - sign is all
that is needed.

Other bases

Other bases such as octal are not used by the interpreter. ASCII
symbols may be used providing they are in the range 32 to 127.
They are written in quotes, thus LD A "s" results in A being 73
hex or 115 decimal, which is the ascii value for small s.

****

Chapter 14 The flags

This chapter discusses the 6 flags used by the Z80, and the
conditions which affect them. The flags are represented in the
register display by the symbols CZPSNH.

The Z or zero flag

The Z flag is set to 1 of the result of an operation is 0. If the
result is other than 0 then the Z flag is reset to 0. The table
below summarizes the instructions that affect the Z flag.

Group	Instruction	Action
8 bit	LD A I	Z = 1 if register = 0 else 0
load group	LD A R	Z = 1 if register = 0 else 0
Search group	CPI, CPIR,	Z = 1 if A = (HL) else 0
	CPD, CPDR	
	ADD A x	Z = 1 if register = 0 else 0
	ADC A x	"
	SUB x	"
	SBC A x	"
	AND x	"
8 bit	OR x	"
arithmetic	XOR x	"
group	CP x	"
	INC x	"
	DEC x	"
General purpose	DAA	"
arithmetic group	NEG	"
16 bit	ADC HL xx	"
arithmetic group	SBC HL xx	"
	RLC x	"
	RL x	"
	RRC x	"
Rotate and	RR x	"
shift group	SLA x	"
	SRA x	"
	SRL x	"

```
              RLD                       "
              RRD                       "

Bit test group       BIT n x        Z = 1 if bit = 0 else 0

Input and            INR (C)        Z = 1 if input data =0 else 0
output group         INI, IND,      Z = 1 if B-1=0 else 0
                     INIR, INDR,    Z = 1
                     OUTI, OUTD,    Z = 1 if B-1=0 else 0
                     OTIR, OTDR     Z = 1

                     The S or sign flag
```

The sign flag is used to indicate whether in twos complement
notation a number is negative or positive. (see chapter 16 for
more about two's complement) Thus if the number is negative (-
128 to -1) then the sign flag is set to 1. If the number is
positive (0 to 127) then the sign flag is reset to 0.

```
Group          Instruction                    Action

8 bit          LD A I         S = 1 if I register negative else 0
load group     LD A R         S = 1 if R register negative else 0

Search         CPI,CPIR,      S = 1 if result negative else 0
group          CPD,CPDR                    "

               ADD A x                     "
               ADC A x                     "
               SUB x                       "
8 bit          SBC A x                     "
arithmetic     AND x                       "
group          OR x                        "
               XOR x                       "
               CP x                        "
               INC x                       "
               DEC x                       "

General purp   DAA                         "
arithmetic     NEG                         "

16 bit         ADC HL xx                   "
arithmetic     SBC HL xx                   "

               RLC x                       "
               RL x                        "
               RRC x                       "
Rotate and     RR x                        "
shift group    SLA x                       "
               SRA x                       "
               SRL x                       "
               RLD x          S = 1 if A negative else 0
               RRD x          S = 1 if A negative else 0

Bit test gp    BIT n x        may be anything

          / IN R (C)          S = 1 if input data negative else 0
```

```
Input and        INI,INIR,
output           IND,INDR,      may be anything
group            OUTI,OTIR,
              \  OUTD,OTDR
```


                    The C or carry flag

The carry flag is used to indicate whether the result of an
operation (in decimal) was greater than 255 or less than 0.

LD A,150:ADD A,200

results in an answer of 350, which is adjusted to 94 (or 5EH in
hex) by subtracting 256, and the carry flag is set. In
subtraction the carry flag is used as a borrow, and is set to 1
if the answer was less then 0, and so had to be corrected by
adding 256.

LD A,100:SUB 210

results in -110, which is adjusted to 146 (92H) by adding 256,
and the carry flag is set to 1.

```
Group           Instruction                  Action

        /    ADD A x       C = 1 if carry from bit 7 else 0
             ADC A x                          "
8 bit        SUB x         C = 1 if borrow else 0
arithmetic   SBC A x                          "
group        AND                       C = 0
             OR                        C = 0
             XOR                       C = 0
        \    CP            C = 1 if borrow else 0


General  /   DAA           C = 1 if bcd carry else 0
purpose      NEG           C = 1 if A not 0 before negate else 0
arithmetic   CCF           C = 1 if C = 0 before CCF else 0
group    \   SCF           C = 1


        /    ADD HL xx     C = 1 if carry from bit 15 else 0
16 bit       ADC HL xx                         "
arithmetic   ADD IX xx                         "
group        ADD IY xx                         "
        \    SBC HL xx     C = 1 if borrow else 0


        /    RLCA          C = previous A bit 7
             RLA                              "
             RRCA          C = previous A bit 0
Rotate       RRA                              "
and shift    RLC x         C = previous bit 7 of operand
group        RL x                             "
             RRC x         C = previous bit 0 of operand
             RR x                             "
             SLA x         C = previous bit 7 of operand
```

```
                  SRA x            C = previous bit 0 of operand
           \   SRL x            C = previous bit 0 of operand
```

The P or P/V parity or overflow flag

As the heading suggests this flag has more than one function.

Parity. The parity of a byte is the number of 1's the byte has
when it is represented in binary. 43 decimal in binary is
00101011, which has 4 1's. If the number of 1's is even
(including 0) then the byte has even parity and the P flag is set
to 1. 59 in binary is 00111110 which has 5 1's and thus the P
flag is set to 0. The instructions which use the P flag as a
parity flag are indicated in the table.

Overflow. This is the other major use for the P flag. Most of the
arithmetic instructions use the P flag as an overflow flag, and
this is why the flag is sometimes written as P/V. Overflow occurs
when, during a two's complement addition the result in two's
complement is >127 or <-128. (see the chapter on bases for more
about two's complement). If this error condition occurs the P
flag is set to 1, otherwise it is set to 0.

The P flag is also used by the block transfer instructions, and
is set to 1 if after the instruction the BC register is not equal
to 0.

```
   Group        Instruction                    Action

   8 bit        LD A I        P = contents of IFF2
   load group   LD A R                          "

   Block       / LDI, LDD,    P = 1 if BC - 1 <> 0 else 0
   transfer      CPI, CPIR,                      "
   and load      CPD, CPDR                       "
   group       \ LDIR, LDDR              P = 0

               / ADD A x      P = 1 if overflow else 0
                 ADC A x                         "
                 SUB x                           "
   8 bit         SBC A x                         "
   arithmetic    AND x        P = 1 if parity even else 0
   group         OR x                            "
                 XOR x                           "
                 CP x         P = 1 if overflow else 0
                 INC x        P = 1 if x=7FH before, else 0
               \ DEC x        P = 1 if x=80H before, else 0

   Gen purp     DAA           P = 1 if A parity even
   arithmetic   NEG           P = 1 if A = 80H before, else 0

   16 bit       ADC HL xx     P = 1 if overflow else 0
   arithmetic   SBC HL xx                       "
```

```
            / RLC x         P = 1 if perity even else 0
              RL x                              "
              RRC x                             "
Rotate and    RR x                              "
shift group   SLA x                             "
              SRA x                             "
              SRL x                             "
              RLD x                             "
            \ RRD x                             "


Bit test gp   BIT n x        may be anything


            / IN R (C)       P = 1 if parity even else 0
Input and     INI,INIR,                may be anything
output        IND,INDR,                         "
group         OUTI,OTIR,                        "
            \ OUTD,OTDR                          "
```

The following are a list of 8 bit additions and subtractions
showing the calculation in decimal and in two's complement, with
the effect on the S C and P flags. None of the answers are zero
so the Z flag is zero for all of these.

```
D  64 + 65 = 129                   C = 0
TC 64 + 65 = 129 -> -127           P = 1   S = 1

D  255 + 255 = 510 -> 254          C = 1
TC -1 + -1 = -2                    P = 0   S = 1

D  192 + 191 = 383 -> 127          C = 1
TC -64 + -65 = -129 -> 127         P = 1   S = 0

D  6 + 8 = 14                      C = 0
TC 6 + 8 = 14                      P = 0   S = 0

D  127 + 1 = 128                   C = 0
TC 127 + 1 = 128 -> -128           P = 1   S = 1

D  4 + 254 = 258 -> 2              C = 1
TC 4 + -2 = 2                      P = 0   S = 0

D  254 + 252 = 506 -> 250          C = 1
TC -2 + -4 = -6                    P = 0   S = 1

D  2 + 252 = 254                   C = 0
TC 2 + -4 = -2                     P = 0   S = 1

D  129 + 194 = 323 -> 67           C = 1
TC -127 + -62 = -189 -> 67         P = 1   S = 0

D  254 - 129 = 125                 C = 0
TC -2 - -127 = 125                 V = 0   S = 0

D  196 - 91 = 105                  C = 0
TC -60 - 91 = -151 -> 105          P = 1   S = 0
```

```
D  12 - 60 = -48 -> 208          C = 1
TC 12 - 60 = -48                 P = 0   S = 1

D  146 - 231 = -85 -> 171        C = 1
TC -110 - 231 = -341 -> -85      P = 1   S = 1
```

                The N or subtract flag and the H or half carry flag

These two flags are used for BCD adds and subtracts. The DAA is
the only instruction that uses these two flags, but the flags are
affected by most of the instruction groups. The H flag indicates
a carry from bit 3 in addition, and a borrow from bit 4 in
subtraction. The N flag is 0 after an add and 1 after a subtract.


```
Group          Instruction          H flag                  N flag

8 bit          LD A I     0                                  0
load group     LD A R     0                                  0

Block       /  LDI, LDIR, 0                                  0
transfer &     LDD, LDDR, 0                                  0
Search         CPI, CPIR, 1 if borrow from bit 4 else 0      1
group       \  CPD, CPDR               "

               ADD A x     1 if carry from bit 3 else 0      0
               ADC A x                 "                     0
               SUB x       1 if borrow from bit 4 else 0     1
8 bit          SBC A x                 "                     1
arithmetic     AND x           1                             0
group          OR x            0                             0
               XOR x           0                             0
               CP x        1 if borrow from bit 4 else 0     1
               INC x       1 if carry from bit 3 else 0      0
               DEC x       1 if borrow from bit 4 else 0     1

General purp   DAA             anything              no change
arithmetic     NEG             1 if borrow bit 4 else 0      1
               CPL             1                             1
               CCF             no change                     0
               SCF             0                             1

16 bit         ADC HL xx  1 if carry from bit 11 else 0      0
arithmetic     ADD HL xx               "                     0
               ADD IX xx               "                     0
               ADD IY xx               "                     0
               SBC HL xx  1 if borrow from bit 12 else 0     1

               RLCA            0                             0
               RLA             0                             0
               RRCA            0                             0
               RRA             0                             0
               RLC x           0                             0
               RL x            0                             0
               RRC x           0                             0
Rotate and     RR x            0                             0
```

```
shift group    SLA x           0                                        0
               SRA x           0                                        0
               SRL x           0                                        0
               RLD x           0                                        0
               RRD x           0                                        0


Bit test gp    BIT n x         1                                        0


             / IN R (C)        0                                        0

Input and      INI,INIR,       anything                                 1
output         IND,INDR,       anything                                 1
group          OUTI,OTIR,      anything                                 1
             \ OUTD,OTDR       anything                                 1
```

More about the flags

The 6 flags are sometimes grouped into the so called F
register. This register is combined with the A register to form
the AF register, which is used in such instructions as EX AF AF',
PUSH AF and POP AF. The flags are assigned as follows.

```
Flag            S   Z   -   H   -   P   N   C

Binary bit      7   6   5   4   3   2   1   0
```

****

Appendix

Values and conversion of bases and ASCII characters

1 = value in decimal
2 = value in hexadecimal
3 = value in binary
4 = value in two's complement
5 = ASCII charater if valid

```
 1      2       3           4           5

 0      00      00000000    0       CONTROL SHIFT P, NULL
 1      01      00000001    1       CONTROL A
 2      02      00000010    2       CONTROL B
 3      03      00000011    3       CONTROL C
 4      04      00000100    4       CONTROL D
 5      05      00000101    5       CONTROL E
 6      06      00000110    6       CONTROL F
 7      07      00000111    7       CONTROL G, rings bell
 8      08      00001000    8       CONTROL H
 9      09      00001001    9       CONTROL I
10      0A      00001010    10      CONTROL J, line feed
11      0B      00001011    11      CONTROL K
12      0C      00001100    12      CONTROL L
13      0D      00001101    13      CONTROL M, carriage return
14      0E      00001110    14      CONTROL N
15      0F      00001111    15      CONTROL O
```

16	10	00010000	16	CONTROL P
17	11	00010001	17	CONTROL Q
18	12	00010010	18	CONTROL R
19	13	00010011	19	CONTROL S
20	14	00010100	20	CONTROL T
21	15	00010101	21	CONTROL U
22	16	00010110	22	CONTROL V
23	17	00010111	23	CONTROL W
24	18	00011000	24	CONTROL X
25	19	00011001	25	CONTROL Y
26	1A	00011010	26	CONTROL Z
27	1B	00011011	27	CONTROL SHIFT K, ESCAPE
28	1C	00011100	28	CONTROL SHIFT L
29	1D	00011101	29	CONTROL SHIFT M
30	1E	00011110	30	CONTROL SHIFT N
31	1F	00011111	31	CONTROL SHIFT O
32	20	00100000	32	SPACE
33	21	00100001	33	!
34	22	00100010	34	"
35	23	00100011	35	#
36	24	00100100	36	$
37	25	00100101	37	%
38	26	00100110	38	&
39	27	00100111	39	'
40	28	00101000	40	(
41	29	00101001	41	)
42	2A	00101010	42	*
43	2B	00101011	43	+
44	2C	00101100	44	,
45	2D	00101101	45	-
46	2E	00101110	46	.
47	2F	00101111	47	/
48	30	00110000	48	0
49	31	00110001	49	1
50	32	00110010	50	2
51	33	00110011	51	3
52	34	00110100	52	4
53	35	00110101	53	5
54	36	00110110	54	6
55	37	00110111	55	7
56	38	00111000	56	8
57	39	00111001	57	9
58	3A	00111010	58	:
59	3B	00111011	59	;
60	3C	00111100	60	<
61	3D	00111101	61	=
62	3E	00111110	62	>
63	3F	00111111	63	?
64	40	01000000	64	@
65	41	01000001	65	A
66	42	01000010	66	B
67	43	01000011	67	C
68	44	01000100	68	D
69	45	01000101	69	E
70	46	01000110	70	F
71	47	01000111	71	G
72	48	01001000	72	H

73	49	01001001	73	I
74	4A	01001010	74	J
75	4B	01001011	75	K
76	4C	01001100	76	L
77	4D	01001101	77	M
78	4E	01001110	78	N
79	4F	01001111	79	O
80	50	01010000	80	P
81	51	01010001	81	Q
82	52	01010010	82	R
83	53	01010011	83	S
84	54	01010100	84	T
85	55	01010101	85	U
86	56	01010110	86	V
87	57	01010111	87	W
88	58	01011000	88	X
89	59	01011001	89	Y
90	5A	01011010	90	Z
91	5B	01011011	91	[
92	5C	01011100	92	\
93	5D	01011101	93	]
94	5E	01011110	94	^
95	5F	01011111	95	_
96	60	01100000	96	`
97	61	01100001	97	a
98	62	01100010	98	b
99	63	01100011	99	c
100	64	01100100	100	d
101	65	01100101	101	e
102	66	01100110	102	f
103	67	01100111	103	g
104	68	01101000	104	h
105	69	01101001	105	i
106	6A	01101010	106	j
107	6B	01101011	107	k
108	6C	01101100	108	l
109	6D	01101101	109	m
110	6E	01101110	110	n
111	6F	01101111	111	o
112	70	01110000	112	p
113	71	01110001	113	q
114	72	01110010	114	r
115	73	01110011	115	s
116	74	01110100	116	t
117	75	01110101	117	u
118	76	01110110	118	v
119	77	01110111	119	w
120	78	01111000	120	x
121	79	01111001	121	y
122	7A	01111010	122	z
123	7B	01111011	123	{
124	7C	01111100	124	|
125	7D	01111101	125	}
126	7E	01111110	126	~
127	7F	01111111	127	DELETE
128	80	10000000	-128	
129	81	10000001	-127	

130	82	10000010	-126
131	83	10000011	-125
132	84	10000100	-124
133	85	10000101	-123
134	86	10000110	-122
135	87	10000111	-121
136	88	10001000	-120
137	89	10001001	-119
138	8A	10001010	-118
139	8B	10001011	-117
140	8C	10001100	-116
141	8D	10001101	-115
142	8E	10001110	-114
143	8F	10001111	-113
144	90	10010000	-112
145	91	10010001	-111
146	92	10010010	-110
147	93	10010011	-109
148	94	10010100	-108
149	95	10010101	-107
150	96	10010110	-106
151	97	10010111	-105
152	98	10011000	-104
153	99	10011001	-103
154	9A	10011010	-102
155	9B	10011011	-101
156	9C	10011100	-100
157	9D	10011101	-99
158	9E	10011110	-98
159	9F	10011111	-97
160	A0	10100000	-96
161	A1	10100001	-95
162	A2	10100010	-94
163	A3	10100011	-93
164	A4	10100100	-92
165	A5	10100101	-91
166	A6	10100110	-90
167	A7	10100111	-89
168	A8	10101000	-88
169	A9	10101001	-87
170	AA	10101010	-86
171	AB	10101011	-85
172	AC	10101100	-84
173	AD	10101101	-83
174	AE	10101110	-82
175	AF	10101111	-81
176	B0	10110000	-80
177	B1	10110001	-79
178	B2	10110010	-78
179	B3	10110011	-77
180	B4	10110100	-76
181	B5	10110101	-75
182	B6	10110110	-74
183	B7	10110111	-73
184	B8	10111000	-72
185	B9	10111001	-71
186	BA	10111010	-70

187	BB	10111011	-69
188	BC	10111100	-68
189	BD	10111101	-67
190	BE	10111110	-66
191	BF	10111111	-65
192	C0	11000000	-64
193	C1	11000001	-63
194	C2	11000010	-62
195	C3	11000011	-61
196	C4	11000100	-60
197	C5	11000101	-59
198	C6	11000110	-58
199	C7	11000111	-57
200	C8	11001000	-56
201	C9	11001001	-55
202	CA	11001010	-54
203	CB	11001011	-53
204	CC	11001100	-52
205	CD	11001101	-51
206	CE	11001110	-50
207	CF	11001111	-49
208	D0	11010000	-48
209	D1	11010001	-47
210	D2	11010010	-46
211	D3	11010011	-45
212	D4	11010100	-44
213	D5	11010101	-43
214	D6	11010110	-42
215	D7	11010111	-41
216	D8	11011000	-40
217	D9	11011001	-39
218	DA	11011010	-38
219	DB	11011011	-37
220	DC	11011100	-36
221	DD	11011101	-35
222	DE	11011110	-34
223	DF	11011111	-33
224	E0	11100000	-32
225	E1	11100001	-31
226	E2	11100010	-30
227	E3	11100011	-29
228	E4	11100100	-28
229	E5	11100101	-27
230	E6	11100110	-26
231	E7	11100111	-25
232	E8	11101000	-24
233	E9	11101001	-23
234	EA	11101010	-22
235	EB	11101011	-21
236	EC	11101100	-20
237	ED	11101101	-19
238	EE	11101110	-18
239	EF	11101111	-17
240	F0	11110000	-16
241	F1	11110001	-15
242	F2	11110010	-14
243	F3	11110011	-13

```
244    F4      11110100    -12
245    F5      11110101    -11
246    F6      11110110    -10
247    F7      11110111    -9
248    F8      11111000    -8
249    F9      11111001    -7
250    FA      11111010    -6
251    FB      11111011    -5
252    FC      11111100    -4
253    FD      11111101    -3
254    FE      11111110    -2
255    FF      11111111    -1


NN      EQU     1234H                   ; a sixteen bit number
N       EQU     56H                     ; an eight bit number

        NOP                             ; 00
        LD BC,NN                        ; 01 XX XX
        LD (BC),A                       ; 02
        INC BC                          ; 03
        INC B                           ; 04
        DEC B                           ; 05
        LD B,N                          ; 06 XX
        RLCA                            ; 07
        EX AF,AF'                       ; 08
        ADD HL,BC                       ; 09
        LD A,(BC)                       ; 0A
        DEC BC                          ; 0B
        INC C                           ; 0C
        DEC C                           ; 0D
        LD C,N                          ; 0E XX
        RRCA                            ; 0F
        DJNZ $+2                        ; 10
        LD DE,NN                        ; 11 XX XX
        LD (DE),A                       ; 12
        INC DE                          ; 13
        INC D                           ; 14
        DEC D                           ; 15
        LD D,N                          ; 16 XX
        RLA                             ; 17
        JR $+2                          ; 18
        ADD HL,DE                       ; 19
        LD A,(DE)                       ; 1A
        DEC DE                          ; 1B
        INC E                           ; 1C
        DEC E                           ; 1D
        LD E,N                          ; 1E XX
        RRA                             ; 1F
        JR NZ,$+2                       ; 20
        LD HL,NN                        ; 21 XX XX
        LD (NN),HL                      ; 22 XX XX
        INC HL                          ; 23
        INC H                           ; 24
        DEC H                           ; 25
        LD H,N                          ; 26 XX
        DAA                             ; 27
        JR Z,$+2                        ; 28
```

```
ADD HL,HL                    ; 29
LD HL,(NN)                   ; 2A XX XX
DEC HL                       ; 2B
INC L                        ; 2C
DEC L                        ; 2D
LD L,N                       ; 2E XX
CPL                          ; 2F
JR NC,$+2                    ; 30
LD SP,NN                     ; 31 XX XX
LD (NN),A                    ; 32 XX XX
INC SP                       ; 33
INC (HL)                     ; 34
DEC (HL)                     ; 35
LD (HL),N                    ; 36 XX
SCF                          ; 37
JR C,$+2                     ; 38
ADD HL,SP                    ; 39
LD A,(NN)                    ; 3A XX XX
DEC SP                       ; 3B
INC A                        ; 3C
DEC A                        ; 3D
LD A,N                       ; 3E XX
CCF                          ; 3F
LD B,B                       ; 40
LD B,C                       ; 41
LD B,D                       ; 42
LD B,E                       ; 43
LD B,H                       ; 44
LD B,L                       ; 45
LD B,(HL)                    ; 46
LD B,A                       ; 47
LD C,B                       ; 48
LD C,C                       ; 49
LD C,D                       ; 4A
LD C,E                       ; 4B
LD C,H                       ; 4C
LD C,L                       ; 4D
LD C,(HL)                    ; 4E
LD C,A                       ; 4F
LD D,B                       ; 50
LD D,C                       ; 51
LD D,D                       ; 52
LD D,E                       ; 53
LD D,H                       ; 54
LD D,L                       ; 55
LD D,(HL)                    ; 56
LD D,A                       ; 57
LD E,B                       ; 58
LD E,C                       ; 59
LD E,D                       ; 5A
LD E,E                       ; 5B
LD E,H                       ; 5C
LD E,L                       ; 5D
LD E,(HL)                    ; 5E
LD E,A                       ; 5F
LD H,B                       ; 60
LD H,C                       ; 61
```

```
LD H,D                          ; 62
LD H,E                          ; 63
LD H,H                          ; 64
LD H,L                          ; 65
LD H,(HL)                       ; 66
LD H,A                          ; 67
LD L,B                          ; 68
LD L,C                          ; 69
LD L,D                          ; 6A
LD L,E                          ; 6B
LD L,H                          ; 6C
LD L,L                          ; 6D
LD L,(HL)                       ; 6E
LD L,A                          ; 6F
LD (HL),B                       ; 70
LD (HL),C                       ; 71
LD (HL),D                       ; 72
LD (HL),E                       ; 73
LD (HL),H                       ; 74
LD (HL),L                       ; 75
HALT                            ; 76
LD (HL),A                       ; 77
LD A,B                          ; 78
LD A,C                          ; 79
LD A,D                          ; 7A
LD A,E                          ; 7B
LD A,H                          ; 7C
LD A,L                          ; 7D
LD A,(HL)                       ; 7E
LD A,A                          ; 7F
ADD A,B                         ; 80
ADD A,C                         ; 81
ADD A,D                         ; 82
ADD A,E                         ; 83
ADD A,H                         ; 84
ADD A,L                         ; 85
ADD A,(HL)                      ; 86
ADD A,A                         ; 87
ADC A,B                         ; 88
ADC A,C                         ; 89
ADC A,D                         ; 8A
ADC A,E                         ; 8B
ADC A,H                         ; 8C
ADC A,L                         ; 8D
ADC A,(HL)                      ; 8E
ADC A,A                         ; 8F
SUB B                           ; 90
SUB C                           ; 91
SUB D                           ; 92
SUB E                           ; 93
SUB H                           ; 94
SUB L                           ; 95
SUB (HL)                        ; 96
SUB A                           ; 97
SBC B                           ; 98
SBC C                           ; 99
SBC D                           ; 9A
```

```
SBC E                          ; 9B
SBC H                          ; 9C
SBC L                          ; 9D
SBC (HL)                       ; 9E
SBC A                          ; 9F
AND B                          ; A0
AND C                          ; A1
AND D                          ; A2
AND E                          ; A3
AND H                          ; A4
AND L                          ; A5
AND (HL)                       ; A6
AND A                          ; A7
XOR B                          ; A8
XOR C                          ; A9
XOR D                          ; AA
XOR E                          ; AB
XOR H                          ; AC
XOR L                          ; AD
XOR (HL)                       ; AE
XOR A                          ; AF
OR B                           ; B0
OR C                           ; B1
OR D                           ; B2
OR E                           ; B3
OR H                           ; B4
OR L                           ; B5
OR (HL)                        ; B6
OR A                           ; B7
CP B                           ; B8
CP C                           ; B9
CP D                           ; BA
CP E                           ; BB
CP H                           ; BC
CP L                           ; BD
CP (HL)                        ; BE
CP A                           ; BF
RET NZ                         ; C0
POP BC                         ; C1
JP NZ,$+3                      ; C2
JP $+3                         ; C3
CALL NZ,NN                     ; C4 XX XX
PUSH BC                        ; C5
ADD A,N                        ; C6 XX
RST 0                          ; C7
RET Z                          ; C8
RET                            ; C9
JP Z,$+3                       ; CA
RLC B                          ; CB 00
RLC C                          ; CB 01
RLC D                          ; CB 02
RLC E                          ; CB 03
RLC H                          ; CB 04
RLC L                          ; CB 05
RLC (HL)                       ; CB 06
RLC A                          ; CB 07
RRC B                          ; CB 08
```

```
RRC C                      ; CB 09
RRC D                      ; CB 0A
RRC E                      ; CB 0B
RRC H                      ; CB 0C
RRC L                      ; CB 0D
RRC (HL)                   ; CB 0E
RRC A                      ; CB 0F
RL  B                      ; CB 10
RL  C                      ; CB 11
RL  D                      ; CB 12
RL  E                      ; CB 13
RL  H                      ; CB 14
RL  L                      ; CB 15
RL  (HL)                   ; CB 16
RL  A                      ; CB 17
RR  B                      ; CB 18
RR  C                      ; CB 19
RR  D                      ; CB 1A
RR  E                      ; CB 1B
RR  H                      ; CB 1C
RR  L                      ; CB 1D
RR  (HL)                   ; CB 1E
RR  A                      ; CB 1F
SLA B                      ; CB 20
SLA C                      ; CB 21
SLA D                      ; CB 22
SLA E                      ; CB 23
SLA H                      ; CB 24
SLA L                      ; CB 25
SLA (HL)                   ; CB 26
SLA A                      ; CB 27
SRA B                      ; CB 28
SRA C                      ; CB 29
SRA D                      ; CB 2A
SRA E                      ; CB 2B
SRA H                      ; CB 2C
SRA L                      ; CB 2D
SRA (HL)                   ; CB 2E
SRA A                      ; CB 2F
SRL B                      ; CB 38
SRL C                      ; CB 39
SRL D                      ; CB 3A
SRL E                      ; CB 3B
SRL H                      ; CB 3C
SRL L                      ; CB 3D
SRL (HL)                   ; CB 3E
SRL A                      ; CB 3F
BIT 0,B                    ; CB 40
BIT 0,C                    ; CB 41
BIT 0,D                    ; CB 42
BIT 0,E                    ; CB 43
BIT 0,H                    ; CB 44
BIT 0,L                    ; CB 45
BIT 0,(HL)                 ; CB 46
BIT 0,A                    ; CB 47
BIT 1,B                    ; CB 48
BIT 1,C                    ; CB 49
```

```
BIT 1,D                        ; CB 4A
BIT 1,E                        ; CB 4B
BIT 1,H                        ; CB 4C
BIT 1,L                        ; CB 4D
BIT 1,(HL)                     ; CB 4E
BIT 1,A                        ; CB 4F
BIT 2,B                        ; CB 50
BIT 2,C                        ; CB 51
BIT 2,D                        ; CB 52
BIT 2,E                        ; CB 53
BIT 2,H                        ; CB 54
BIT 2,L                        ; CB 55
BIT 2,(HL)                     ; CB 56
BIT 2,A                        ; CB 57
BIT 3,B                        ; CB 58
BIT 3,C                        ; CB 59
BIT 3,D                        ; CB 5A
BIT 3,E                        ; CB 5B
BIT 3,H                        ; CB 5C
BIT 3,L                        ; CB 5D
BIT 3,(HL)                     ; CB 5E
BIT 3,A                        ; CB 5F
BIT 4,B                        ; CB 60
BIT 4,C                        ; CB 61
BIT 4,D                        ; CB 62
BIT 4,E                        ; CB 63
BIT 4,H                        ; CB 64
BIT 4,L                        ; CB 65
BIT 4,(HL)                     ; CB 66
BIT 4,A                        ; CB 67
BIT 5,B                        ; CB 68
BIT 5,C                        ; CB 69
BIT 5,D                        ; CB 6A
BIT 5,E                        ; CB 6B
BIT 5,H                        ; CB 6C
BIT 5,L                        ; CB 6D
BIT 5,(HL)                     ; CB 6E
BIT 5,A                        ; CB 6F
BIT 6,B                        ; CB 70
BIT 6,C                        ; CB 71
BIT 6,D                        ; CB 72
BIT 6,E                        ; CB 73
BIT 6,H                        ; CB 74
BIT 6,L                        ; CB 75
BIT 6,(HL)                     ; CB 76
BIT 6,A                        ; CB 77
BIT 7,B                        ; CB 78
BIT 7,C                        ; CB 79
BIT 7,D                        ; CB 7A
BIT 7,E                        ; CB 7B
BIT 7,H                        ; CB 7C
BIT 7,L                        ; CB 7D
BIT 7,(HL)                     ; CB 7E
BIT 7,A                        ; CB 7F
RES 0,B                        ; CB 80
RES 0,C                        ; CB 81
RES 0,D                        ; CB 82
```

```
RES 0,E                          ; CB 83
RES 0,H                          ; CB 84
RES 0,L                          ; CB 85
RES 0,(HL)                       ; CB 86
RES 0,A                          ; CB 87
RES 1,B                          ; CB 88
RES 1,C                          ; CB 89
RES 1,D                          ; CB 8A
RES 1,E                          ; CB 8B
RES 1,H                          ; CB 8C
RES 1,L                          ; CB 8D
RES 1,(HL)                       ; CB 8E
RES 1,A                          ; CB 8F
RES 2,B                          ; CB 90
RES 2,C                          ; CB 91
RES 2,D                          ; CB 92
RES 2,E                          ; CB 93
RES 2,H                          ; CB 94
RES 2,L                          ; CB 95
RES 2,(HL)                       ; CB 96
RES 2,A                          ; CB 97
RES 3,B                          ; CB 98
RES 3,C                          ; CB 99
RES 3,D                          ; CB 9A
RES 3,E                          ; CB 9B
RES 3,H                          ; CB 9C
RES 3,L                          ; CB 9D
RES 3,(HL)                       ; CB 9E
RES 3,A                          ; CB 9F
RES 4,B                          ; CB A0
RES 4,C                          ; CB A1
RES 4,D                          ; CB A2
RES 4,E                          ; CB A3
RES 4,H                          ; CB A4
RES 4,L                          ; CB A5
RES 4,(HL)                       ; CB A6
RES 4,A                          ; CB A7
RES 5,B                          ; CB A8
RES 5,C                          ; CB A9
RES 5,D                          ; CB AA
RES 5,E                          ; CB AB
RES 5,H                          ; CB AC
RES 5,L                          ; CB AD
RES 5,(HL)                       ; CB AE
RES 5,A                          ; CB AF
RES 6,B                          ; CB B0
RES 6,C                          ; CB B1
RES 6,D                          ; CB B2
RES 6,E                          ; CB B3
RES 6,H                          ; CB B4
RES 6,L                          ; CB B5
RES 6,(HL)                       ; CB B6
RES 6,A                          ; CB B7
RES 7,B                          ; CB B8
RES 7,C                          ; CB B9
RES 7,D                          ; CB BA
RES 7,E                          ; CB BB
```

```
RES 7,H                          ; CB BC
RES 7,L                          ; CB BD
RES 7,(HL)                       ; CB BE
RES 7,A                          ; CB BF
SET 0,B                          ; CB C0
SET 0,C                          ; CB C1
SET 0,D                          ; CB C2
SET 0,E                          ; CB C3
SET 0,H                          ; CB C4
SET 0,L                          ; CB C5
SET 0,(HL)                       ; CB C6
SET 0,A                          ; CB C7
SET 1,B                          ; CB C8
SET 1,C                          ; CB C9
SET 1,D                          ; CB CA
SET 1,E                          ; CB CB
SET 1,H                          ; CB CC
SET 1,L                          ; CB CD
SET 1,(HL)                       ; CB CE
SET 1,A                          ; CB CF
SET 2,B                          ; CB D0
SET 2,C                          ; CB D1
SET 2,D                          ; CB D2
SET 2,E                          ; CB D3
SET 2,H                          ; CB D4
SET 2,L                          ; CB D5
SET 2,(HL)                       ; CB D6
SET 2,A                          ; CB D7
SET 3,B                          ; CB D8
SET 3,C                          ; CB D9
SET 3,D                          ; CB DA
SET 3,E                          ; CB DB
SET 3,H                          ; CB DC
SET 3,L                          ; CB DD
SET 3,(HL)                       ; CB DE
SET 3,A                          ; CB DF
SET 4,B                          ; CB E0
SET 4,C                          ; CB E1
SET 4,D                          ; CB E2
SET 4,E                          ; CB E3
SET 4,H                          ; CB E4
SET 4,L                          ; CB E5
SET 4,(HL)                       ; CB E6
SET 4,A                          ; CB E7
SET 5,B                          ; CB E8
SET 5,C                          ; CB E9
SET 5,D                          ; CB EA
SET 5,E                          ; CB EB
SET 5,H                          ; CB EC
SET 5,L                          ; CB ED
SET 5,(HL)                       ; CB EE
SET 5,A                          ; CB EF
SET 6,B                          ; CB F0
SET 6,C                          ; CB F1
SET 6,D                          ; CB F2
SET 6,E                          ; CB F3
SET 6,H                          ; CB F4
```

```
SET 6,L                      ; CB F5
SET 6,(HL)                   ; CB F6
SET 6,A                      ; CB F7
SET 7,B                      ; CB F8
SET 7,C                      ; CB F9
SET 7,D                      ; CB FA
SET 7,E                      ; CB FB
SET 7,H                      ; CB FC
SET 7,L                      ; CB FD
SET 7,(HL)                   ; CB FE
SET 7,A                      ; CB FF
CALL Z,NN                    ; CC XX XX
CALL NN                      ; CD XX XX
ADC A,N                      ; CE XX
RST 8H                       ; CF
RET NC                       ; D0
POP DE                       ; D1
JP NC,$+3                    ; D2
OUT (N),A                    ; D3 XX
CALL NC,NN                   ; D4 XX XX
CALL NC,NN                   ; D4 XX XX
PUSH DE                      ; D5
SUB N                        ; D6 XX
RST 10H                      ; D7
RET C                        ; D8
EXX                          ; D9
JP C,$+3                     ; DA
IN A,(N)                     ; DB XX
CALL C,NN                    ; DC XX XX
ADD IX,BC                    ; DD 09
ADD IX,DE                    ; DD 19
LD IX,NN                     ; DD 21 XX XX
LD (NN),IX                   ; DD 22 XX XX
INC IX                       ; DD 23
ADD IX,IX                    ; DD 29
LD IX,(NN)                   ; DD 2A XX XX
DEC IX                       ; DD 2B
INC (IX+N)                   ; DD 34 XX
DEC (IX+N)                   ; DD 35 XX
LD (IX+N),N                  ; DD 36 XX XX
ADD IX,SP                    ; DD 39
LD B,(IX+N)                  ; DD 46 XX
LD C,(IX+N)                  ; DD 4E XX
LD D,(IX+N)                  ; DD 56 XX
LD E,(IX+N)                  ; DD 5E XX
LD H,(IX+N)                  ; DD 66 XX
LD L,(IX+N)                  ; DD 6E XX
LD (IX+N),B                  ; DD 70 XX
LD (IX+N),C                  ; DD 71 XX
LD (IX+N),D                  ; DD 72 XX
LD (IX+N),E                  ; DD 73 XX
LD (IX+N),H                  ; DD 74 XX
LD (IX+N),L                  ; DD 75 XX
LD (IX+N),A                  ; DD 77 XX
LD A,(IX+N)                  ; DD 7E XX
ADD A,(IX+N)                 ; DD 86 XX
ADC A,(IX+N)                 ; DD 8E XX
```

```
SUB (IX+N)                    ; DD 96 XX
SBC A,(IX+N)                  ; DD 9E XX
AND (IX+N)                    ; DD A6 XX
XOR (IX+N)                    ; DD AE XX
OR (IX+N)                     ; DD B6 XX
CP (IX+N)                     ; DD BE XX
RLC (IX+N)                    ; DD CB XX 06
RRC (IX+N)                    ; DD CB XX 0E
RL (IX+N)                     ; DD CB XX 16
RR (IX+N)                     ; DD CB XX 1E
SLA (IX+N)                    ; DD CB XX 26
SRA (IX+N)                    ; DD CB XX 2E
BIT 0,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 46
BIT 1,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 4E
BIT 2,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 56
BIT 3,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 5E
BIT 4,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 66
BIT 5,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 6E
BIT 6,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 76
BIT 7,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 7E
RES 0,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 86
RES 1,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 8E
RES 2,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 96
RES 3,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX 9E
RES 4,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX A6
RES 5,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX AE
RES 6,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX B6
RES 7,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX BE
SET 0,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX C6
SET 1,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX CE
SET 2,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX D6
SET 3,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX DE
SET 4,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX E6
SET 5,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX EE
SET 6,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX F6
SET 7,(IX+N)                  ; DD CB XX FE
POP IX                        ; DD E1
EX (SP),IX                    ; DD E3
PUSH IX                       ; DD E5
JP (IX)                       ; DD E9
LD SP,IX                      ; DD F9
SBC A,N                       ; DE XX
RST 18H                       ; DF
RET PO                        ; E0
POP HL                        ; E1
JP PO,$+3                     ; E2
EX (SP),HL                    ; E3
CALL PO,NN                    ; E4 XX XX
PUSH HL                       ; E5
AND N                         ; E6 XX
RST 20H                       ; E7
RET PE                        ; E8
JP (HL)                       ; E9
JP PE,$+3                     ; EA
EX DE,HL                      ; EB
CALL PE,NN                    ; EC XX XX
IN B,(C)                      ; ED 40
```

```
OUT (C),B                 ; ED 41
SBC HL,BC                 ; ED 42
LD (NN),BC                ; ED 43 XX XX
NEG                       ; ED 44
RETN                      ; ED 45
IM 0                      ; ED 46
LD I,A                    ; ED 47
IN C,(C)                  ; ED 48
OUT (C),C                 ; ED 49
ADC HL,BC                 ; ED 4A
LD BC,(NN)                ; ED 4B XX XX
RETI                      ; ED 4D
IN D,(C)                  ; ED 50
OUT (C),D                 ; ED 51
SBC HL,DE                 ; ED 52
LD (NN),DE                ; ED 53 XX XX
IM 1                      ; ED 56
LD A,I                    ; ED 57
IN E,(C)                  ; ED 58
OUT (C),E                 ; ED 59
ADC HL,DE                 ; ED 5A
LD DE,(NN)                ; ED 5B XX XX
IM 2                      ; ED 5E
IN H,(C)                  ; ED 60
OUT (C),H                 ; ED 61
SBC HL,HL                 ; ED 62
RRD                       ; ED 67
IN L,(C)                  ; ED 68
OUT (C),L                 ; ED 69
ADC HL,HL                 ; ED 6A
RLD                       ; ED 6F
SBC HL,SP                 ; ED 72
LD (NN),SP                ; ED 73 XX XX
IN A,(C)                  ; ED 78
OUT (C),A                 ; ED 79
ADC HL,SP                 ; ED 7A
LD SP,(NN)                ; ED 7B XX XX
LDI                       ; ED A0
CPI                       ; ED A1
INI                       ; ED A2
OUTI                      ; ED A3
LDD                       ; ED A8
CPD                       ; ED A9
IND                       ; ED AA
OUTD                      ; ED AB
LDIR                      ; ED B0
CPIR                      ; ED B1
INIR                      ; ED B2
OTIR                      ; ED B3
LDDR                      ; ED B8
CPDR                      ; ED B9
INDR                      ; ED BA
OTDR                      ; ED BB
XOR N                     ; EE XX
RST 28H                   ; EF
RET P                     ; F0
POP AF                    ; F1
```

```
JP P,$+3                  ; F2
DI                        ; F3
CALL P,NN                 ; F4 XX XX
PUSH AF                   ; F5
OR N                      ; F6 XX
RST 30H                   ; F7
RET M                     ; F8
LD SP,HL                  ; F9
JP M,$+3                  ; FA
EI                        ; FB
CALL M,NN                 ; FC XX XX
ADD IY,BC                 ; FD 09
ADD IY,DE                 ; FD 19
LD IY,NN                  ; FD 21 XX XX
LD (NN),IY                ; FD 22 XX XX
INC IY                    ; FD 23
ADD IY,IY                 ; FD 29
LD IY,(NN)                ; FD 2A XX XX
DEC IY                    ; FD 2B
INC (IY+N)                ; FD 34 XX
DEC (IY+N)                ; FD 35 XX
LD (IY+N),N               ; FD 36 XX XX
ADD IY,SP                 ; FD 39
LD B,(IY+N)               ; FD 46 XX
LD C,(IY+N)               ; FD 4E XX
LD D,(IY+N)               ; FD 56 XX
LD E,(IY+N)               ; FD 5E XX
LD H,(IY+N)               ; FD 66 XX
LD L,(IY+N)               ; FD 6E XX
LD (IY+N),B               ; FD 70 XX
LD (IY+N),C               ; FD 71 XX
LD (IY+N),D               ; FD 72 XX
LD (IY+N),E               ; FD 73 XX
LD (IY+N),H               ; FD 74 XX
LD (IY+N),L               ; FD 75 XX
LD (IY+N),A               ; FD 77 XX
LD A,(IY+N)               ; FD 7E XX
ADD A,(IY+N)              ; FD 86 XX
ADC A,(IY+N)              ; FD 8E XX
SUB (IY+N)                ; FD 96 XX
SBC A,(IY+N)              ; FD 9E XX
AND (IY+N)                ; FD A6 XX
XOR (IY+N)                ; FD AE XX
OR (IY+N)                 ; FD B6 XX
CP (IY+N)                 ; FD BE XX
RLC (IY+N)                ; FD CB XX 06
RRC (IY+N)                ; FD CB XX 0E
RL (IY+N)                 ; FD CB XX 16
RR (IY+N)                 ; FD CB XX 1E
SLA (IY+N)                ; FD CB XX 26
SRA (IY+N)                ; FD CB XX 2E
BIT 0,(IY+N)              ; FD CB XX 46
BIT 1,(IY+N)              ; FD CB XX 4E
BIT 2,(IY+N)              ; FD CB XX 56
BIT 3,(IY+N)              ; FD CB XX 5E
BIT 4,(IY+N)              ; FD CB XX 66
BIT 5,(IY+N)              ; FD CB XX 6E
```

```
BIT 6,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX 76
BIT 7,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX 7E
RES 0,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX 86
RES 1,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX 8E
RES 2,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX 96
RES 3,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX 9E
RES 4,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX A6
RES 5,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX AE
RES 6,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX B6
RES 7,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX BE
SET 0,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX C6
SET 1,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX CE
SET 2,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX D6
SET 3,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX DE
SET 4,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX E6
SET 5,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX EE
SET 6,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX F6
SET 7,(IY+N)                    ; FD CB XX FE
POP IY                          ; FD E1
EX (SP),IY                      ; FD E3
PUSH IY                         ; FD E5
JP (IY)                         ; FD E9
LD SP,IY                        ; FD F9
CP N                            ; FE XX
RST 38H                         ; FF
```